

THE
H I S T O R Y
O F
Valentine and Orson :

Two S O N S of the
E M P E R O R of G R E E C E.

Newly Corrected and Amended; with new P I C T U R E S, lively expressing the
H I S T O R Y.



BELFAST: Printed by and for JAMES MAGEE, at the BIBLE and
CROWN in *Bridge-street.* M,DCC,LXXXII.

The PRINTER to the READER.

AMONG many Histories, as well antient as modern, which have in former Times borrowed our *English* Phrase to speak withal, this (gentle Reader) here of *Valentine* and *Orson*, Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*, now once again re-printed, craves free Passage of thy Acceptance, and puts itself to the Censure of those Historiographers, who make Invention the eldest Daughter of the seven Sciences. Therefore considering with myself the Worthiness of the Story, with the Variety thereof, being many Years ago first written in *French*, and since translated into *English*, where it hath found a favourable Welcome, as well of Superiors as Inferiors: I have now again to my Cost and Charge, published it to the Eye and Ear of such, to be seen and heard, as take Pleasure in these Kind of Writings. It is furnished with much State of Matter, Elegancy and Invention, and deck'd forth with many fair Models and lively Pictures, all pertinent and agreeable to the Subject of the History, which I have caused to be newly cut, not only to make it carry the more Grace in Reading, but more Lustre in heroic Atchievements of knightly Adventures. For here may the princely Mind see his own Model; the knightly Tilter his martial Atchievements; and the amorous Lady her dulcify Passages of Love. Here are Countries with the Courts of Kings decipher'd; the Magnitude of Honours laid open; and the true Form of Tournaments describ'd, and between Knight and Knight are here most lively Combats pourtray'd to the great Content of the Reader. Let no Man therefore think his Time ill spent, or his Labour lost, where the Matter affords such Copiousness of Pleasure. The History, for the Strangeness, may well bear the Title of courtly Contents, for indeed it is a Garden of courtly Delights, wherein grow Flowers of an extraordinary Savour, that give Scent in the Bosom of Nobles, Ladies, Knights and Gentlewomen: It gives also a working to the Minds of dull Country Swains, and, as it were, leads them to search for martial Atchievements, befitting many Pastimes. Herein is also contained the true Difference betwixt Art and Nature; for in *Valentine* is comprehended the Education of Art; and in *Orson* the true working of Nature; for being both one Emperor's Sons, the one brought up in a Prince's Palace, the other among Savage Beasts; now makes the Current pass with more Admiration to the Rea-

der. Mark but the Courage of wild *Orson*, and you shall find that Nature hath a Being above Art, but yet Nature bettered by Art hath a more noble working. The History here written was translated out of *French* into *English* above two hundred Years ago, by one *Henry Watson*, and since that Time hath been by him corrected, and put into a more plain Stile, and followed on the Press, till this present Edition, which I have (as you see) here published for thy Benefit. Therefore, gentle Reader, accept of this my Cost and Pains, who had rather prove a Loser, than so worthy a Story as this should lie in Obscurity; for there are few Subjects of human Carriage, but are herein handled, therefore the more fitting to be seen into. If you desire to see the Care and Trouble of Kings, here they are; if you desire to know the Battles of martial Champions, here they are; if for courtly Tournaments and Combats of Princes, here they are; if the Travels of knightly Adventures, here they are; if of the Sorrows of distress'd Ladies, here they are; if of strange Birds and Savage Education, here they are; if of Friends long lost, and their joyful Meeting again, here they are; if of Charms and Enchantments, here they are; if of the Reward of Traitors and Treasons, here they are; if of long Captivities and Imprisonments, here they are; Yea, here are all the Varieties and Passages that may furnish forth a History fit for a Reader's Pleasure; for no unseemly Words or Speeches are here contain'd, but such as are modestly carried. Considering all which I am now encouraged to put this old Story into a new Livery, and not suffer that to lie buried, that a little Cost may keep alive. And so, gentle Reader, craving thy kind Acceptance, I wish thee as much Willingness to the Reading, as I have been forward in the Printing; and so I end.

FAREWELL.

N. B. As the following History has been formerly printed in long Lines, extending the whole Breadth of the Page, and found to be very inconvenient to the Reader; the Printer of this Edition has thought proper to divide it into Columns, by which Method the Lines may be more easily followed.

THE



THE
HISTOR Y
OF
VALENTINE and ORSON.

CHAP. I.

How King Pepin banished his Queen Bertha; and how he gave his Sister Bellifant in Marriage to Alexander Emperor of Constantinople.

WE find it set down in antient Chronicles, That the thrice noble and valiant *Pepin*, some Time King of *France*, took to Wife *Bertha*, who was descended of no less than Royal Race: This Lady was exceeding fair and wise, but wondrously incumbered with many Adversities and Troubles, enviously beset on every Side, which with great Patience she suffered. The chief Instrument of all Mischief towards this good Queen was plotted, and effected by a false and cursed old Woman, who first of all brought her into Disgrace with the King her Husband, and after to be quite banished his Bed, while she in a cunning Manner, brought in a Daughter of her own in the Queen's stead: This old Woman having thus brought her Treachery to effect, (for her Daughter somewhat resembled *Bertha*) it so came to pass that King *Pepin* had two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, *Haufray* and *Henry*, both which Sons so grieved the King, and wasted the Country of *France*, by their Outrages and Fury, that in the End they caused the Queen *Bertha* to be utterly banished, where she passed a great Part of her Days in doleful Lamentations and Abundance of Sorrow: She long endured those miserable days of Sorrow, but at last began to receive Comfort again; for so it chanced after, at the earnest Request of divers great Peers

and Lords of *France*, this good Queen began to find Favour with the King her Husband, who (when he knew the Treachery that wicked old Woman had plotted against her) much bewailed the Miseries she had endured, and with great Honour and Triumph received her again most kindly. The Queen being thus restored to her former Bed, in short Time conceived, and bare unto the King a goodly Son named *Charlemain* the Puissant; but the King himself was continually hunted from Place to Place by the aforesaid *Haufray* and *Henry*, and at last compelled by them to forsake his Realm, as hereafter follows more at large in the ensuing History. My Purpose in this is, to set down unto the Reader, the whole Matter contained in this Book; and especially the valiant Acts and Deeds of *Valentine* and *Orson*. This King *Pepin* had a Sister named *Bellifant*, a Woman of great Wit, Beauty, and all the Endowments that Nature might afford, which caused her Brother's Love mightily to appear to all the World, in the ardent Love and Affection that he bare her. It chanced so that the Fame of this lovely Personage spread itself abroad in other Regions, that at last *Alexander*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, who was much inflamed with her Beauty, came into *France*, accompanied with a gallant Troop of his Nobility, all rich set out with all Manner of Pomp belonging to such great Personages. This Emperor, shortly after his Arrival, suddenly assembled all his Lords in their rich Habilliments, appointing them to take their Way towards

wards King *Pepin's* Court; which, when he understood, he joyfully entertained them, and quickly granted the Emperor's Request. King *Pepin* understanding this sudden but joyful News, made great Preparations in his Court for entertaining this noble Emperor. All Things being in a Readiness, King *Pepin* with all his noble Train, went to meet *Alexander* Emperor of *Constantinople*; whom when they met, they received with great Joy, and conducted him to the Court of *France*, where fair *Bellifant* was: and she received him with no less Joy than her Brother had done before; and there they spent their Time in Joy and Triumph.

This Marriage being once publickly known among all the Inhabitants, Joy began to shew forth itself on every Side, for such a happy Day; wherein such good Alliance was knit between the Emperor *Alexander* and King *Pepin*, that Triumphs began in every Place against the Nuptial-day's Appearance. When the Time appointed came, these two were espoused in all Honour fitting for their Estates, and *Largeness*, shewed itself on every Side. This Marriage-feast lasted long; but at last being ended, the Emperor, assisted with all his worthy Train, made Preparation to take their Leave of his new Brother-in-law, and took their Way towards *Constantinople*, with his fair Empress *Bellifant*. Being thus mounted on Horseback, King *Pepin* also set forward with his Brother to bring him on his Way, royally attended on every Side with Lords and Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court: And they that could not find Legs to go, found Eyes to weep for the Departure of their fair Lady and Mistress, the new Empress. These mighty Princes came near unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they must needs part; there taking Leave of each other, they were forced to render more Thanks in Tears than Words, the which I am not able to express: But above all, the Emperor yielded to King *Pepin* worthy Thanks, for his quick, sudden and generous Consent, in giving to him his fair Sister *Bellifant*, and with so frank and free a Heart to yield him Good-will. At which Words of the Emperor unto King *Pepin*, the King presently embraced him in his Arms, saying, 'Fair Sir, my right loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your State required, nor with such Triumphs and Magnificence as became me; but in that you have so graciously accepted my small Power, I hold myself content in that I

have done, but not that I should have done; and therefore there belongeth small Thanks to me, but from me innumerable, in that you have been pleased to accept of my Sister for your Wife; whereby (I trust) long Friendship shall be continued betwixt us: In Token whereof I take Witness of all that are present, that my Body, my Realm, my Goods, and all the Powers that I can raise in *France* to adventure for your Safety and Succour all the Days of my Life.' King *Pepin* being now departed from the Emperor, turned himself to his Sister, and in this Manner takes his Leave: 'Fair Sister, (quoth he) think no longer of this Country of *France*, wherein you have spent your Infant Days, but remember you are removed to a Country of better Condition: Also, let your Behaviour be such that I, the rest of your Friends, and the whole Company of all the Peers, may have Honour and Joy in you. Again, as the Country where you now go to is strange unto you, so be you governed by the modest Ladies of the Land, and give no Ear to wicked Counsel, or to such as would move you to Disloyalty: For you are the Creature that I have always loved dearest in all the World, wherefore if I should hear Tidings other than good from you, or of you, it would be the only Cause to take away my Life.' After this he gave unto his Sister many worthy Gifts, and so embracing and kissing her with weeping Eyes, he left her to the Mercy of the Waves. The young Lady, whose Heart being overcharged betwixt Joy and Fear, was not able to answer a Word, and what with Tears and Sighs, the Passage of her Tears was utterly stopt, then all the Lords and Ladies took their Leave of each other, at which Time was let fall many a Tear, as well on their Parts of *France*, as they also that were to go to *Constantinople*; but especially for the Departure of the fair Lady *Bellifant*. All Duties of Love being ended, King *Pepin* returned into *France*, and the Emperor by this Time mounted upon the Seas, had Wind and Water at such Will and Pleasure, that within short Space, he, with all his Train, arrived with Safety at *Constantinople*, where, at their Landing, they were all received with great Joy, Honour and Triumph: all which here were needless to recount. But mark what happened, not long after these Joys and Triumphs were clean extinguished, that were made for the Lady *Bellifant*, in Place whereof nothing but Mourning, Lamentation and Tears were placed, and

and all for the poor Lady, which by Reason of false Accusations was cast out and banished, as hereafter more at large you shall perceive.

CHAP. II.

How the Arch-Priest of Constantinople betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Master, in making Love to fair Bellisant the Empress; and what Evil followed thereupon.

IN Constantinople lived an Arch-Priest, in whom the Emperor put such Trust, and loved so fervently, that he bestowed upon him great Riches and Possessions, and committed all his Bosom-thoughts unto his Secresy; and in the End, made him sole Governor and Commander over all his House; also he was the Emperor's Confessor, and one of his greatest Favourites, for which he afterwards had many a sorrowful Heart. The Arch-Priest forgetting all the Emperor's Favours, and great Honours done unto him, being entangled and overcome with the Beauty of the new Empress, which excelled all mortal Creatures; inordinate Lust prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his Way, save only a fit Opportunity to settle this his Determination. At last it chanced that he espied her all alone, sitting solitary in her Chamber, which this Arch-Priest well observing, he came in and sat down by her: At last he began to behold her with a smiling Countenance; of all which the Lady mistrusted nothing, for that she well remembered his Greatness with the Emperor, and Familiarity in the House; and she never so much as once dream'd or thought of such an Evil, as that he thereby would colour so filthy an Act as to motion to her Dishonour, especially towards the Emperor, his worthy Lord and Master, who so dearly esteemed him, and so much affected him: But there is never more Danger like to ensue than when one of the same House intendeth Treason. But at last, after many impure Gestures, and sitting still by this worthy and virtuous Lady, he began to utter his lascivious Thoughts in this Manner:

'Right dear and sovereign Lady (said he) I am your Servant and Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your Ears, but rather set them wide open to hear my rude Words, especially for that I am burnt up in Affection towards your fair Person, and for whose Love I have suffered intolerable torments in my fiery Bosom: Know therefore (my dear redoubted Lady) that the Beauty of your admirable Person, and the celestial Form wherein you are framed and composed, hath even ravish'd my Spirits,

broken my Heart, split my whole Senses in sunder, and quite bereft me of Rest, both by Day and Night, and only with doating upon your peerless Beauty. Again, fair Lady, my Meat, Drink, Manners, yea, and my Countenance, insomuch that my only Request and Prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they would so enchant that Heart of yours, that you would at Length give Consent unto me your Vassal, that I might not only serve you, but also delight you in all those Pleasures you are ordained unto. If, Lady, you refuse me, and cast me off, denying those my restless Thoughts (than which nothing will sooner cut my Heart asunder) I can look for nothing but present Death, and rather covet therein to be lock'd fast as in Prison, than receive a Denial from those your fair Lips. Alas! fair Lady, you are renowned in all the Gifts of Nature, fair, amiable, courteous, gentle and youthful; be not then the Cause, that I should determine my Life by losing your Love, but rather grant what I desire, and thereby make me yours in hearty Affection. But, fair Lady, haply you will urge, How dare you offend the Gods in this unlawful Act? To this, fair Lady, I answer, I am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon Earth, and therefore it wholly rests in my Power to absolve you of your Sins, and enjoin your Penance; which, trust me Lady, shall fall out to be very easy, so you grant me Love.'

These Speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto, out of a grave and prudent Carriage, made unto this perjured Priest, this excellent Reprehension and Answer. 'Ah! thou false, unjust, disloyal and devilish Priest, Stain to all thy Profession; how dar'st thou once open thy perjured Mouth to such a Mass of Villainies as thereon may ensue? First, as I may say, against the Sacred Order: Secondly, but more principally, against the Majesty of that Emperor that ever nourished thee in the Bond of tender Compassion and Love, and hath raised thee to great Dignities far unfit for such a Devil incarnate; and from whom may justly proceed the Sentence of Condemnation both on thee and me, if he should but understand thy lascivious and wicked Practices. Thou (I say) Devil, and worse than Devil, thou that shouldest be unto me Instruction, and also Guide to my Life and Conversation, in this thou goest about my utter Ruin and Destruction by thy evil Conditions, even beyond that good Expectation which the Emperor trusted to be in thee. O never grant, ye Gods, that the Blood of France, from whence I am descended,

nor the Emperor, my loving Lord, should be dishonoured, either by me in my Body, or thro' my Privy in any other Manner. O false accursed Man! behold whereunto thou wouldst deliver me: First, unto the utter Ruin and Spoil of mine Honour; next shut up my Body in immoveable Shame for ever among Men; and lastly, bring the Soul into the Jaws of Death and the Devil. Let fall, I say, all vile devilish Provocations to Lust, and leave for ever hereafter, to solicit me in this Manner, which if thou further prosecute unto me, thou canst look for nothing but a shameful Downfall and a most damnable Death: Therefore with this Answer depart, and see that you attempt me no more.

This angry Farewel of the worthy Empress, stung the Priest at the very Heart, but at that Time durst make no further Reply unto the fair Lady concerning Love; but as a Man all composed of Rage and Fury, he then departed, discontent at his most unfortunate Change. At last when he could no longer hold, he excused himself unto the Lady, craving Pardon for his bold, saucy and rash Follies committed, but yet could find no Remedy to restore his Honour. Thus being sore troubled in Mind, divers Ways he resolved what to do upon Revenge, which he accordingly effected by Treason against the innocent Lady. The Emperor knew nothing of this Matter from the Empress *Bellifant*, how the Arch-Priest would have enticed her to Dishonour, and would have drawn her to Disloyalty to the Emperor by so great a Crime. The Arch-Priest having now began to set abroad his devilish Practices, began to bethink him how he might effect what he had determined, and also preserve the Reputation of his former Honours which the Emperor had bestowed upon him; whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly, under the Cloak of Diffimulation, bear fair Weather towards the Emperor, as also seemed to shew how great a Care he had for his Preservation, and make known his Loyalty and watchful Care that he ever had towards the Welfare of his Estate and Person: so it befel, that on a Day, when he spied a fit Opportunity, taking the Emperor all alone, he began to speak to him in this Manner:

'Right high and mighty Emperor, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount and highly esteem the many and innumerable Favours and great Kindness, which I have always received from your mighty Highness; Wherefore as Duty doth always bind me, I am ever most

'watchful over the Passages of your Estate, in which I now stand by you appointed; but especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all others: Therefore, it is my Duty to bewray unto you all those Carriages that any Way concern your high and mighty Person; wherefore I beseech your Highness to give Ear to that which I shall now disclose unto you; for I had rather suffer all the Torments of Death, than to hide any Thing from you, and the rather, for that nearly toucheth your Person and Honour. Emperor! thus it is, *Bellifant* your Wife, and Sister to the King of France, she whom you have advanced to this State and Dignity, faileth in the Duty and Loyalty which she oweth unto her dread Lord; for she wandereth in her Love, giveth that unto another, which is proper only for yourself: To name the Person unto your Majesty, I will not, for you know I am a sacred Priest, and may not seek the Blood of any Man; but yet, know for certain, that by the Way of Confession I came unto the Light thereof, whereof I neither ought, nor will bewray the Name of him that thus usurps your Bed: But let it suffice, there is not a more unclean lascivious Woman liveth in your Court or Kingdom, whereby your Life is in Danger, your Honour defamed, and my Duty towards you approved by what I have told you. My Advice therefore is, to be wary of your Person, and correct this her Folly, but yet mildly and wisely, always with the Preservation of your Honour. For will it not be a great Shame among the Princes of the Earth, that you have taken a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for Beauty is incomparable, her Nobleness and Wisdom is not to be outshined by any earthly Lady, and to prove a Whore? and what worse is, one who daily desireth your Death; which grieves my Heart to think upon.'

The Emperor having thus heard this long Accusation, little mistrusted the Treachery of the Arch-Priest, but gave Credit to all his fair, but false Words, and therewith became extreme pensive and sad, that his Trust in her beauteous Love had been thus deceived. At last, having many Days in many Places uttered forth many discontented Gestures, Words and Sighs, and many grievous Acclamations, even in the Imperial Palace, he gave Rest a while unto his discontented Passions; but wakened Revenge to wait a fitter Opportunity. And upon a Day, entering into the Chamber of his fair

fair Lady *Bellifant*, without speaking any Word to her at all, in a most fierce, rude and unmannerly Order, took his Lady by the Head, and pulling her by the Hair, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the Ground in such a horrid Manner, that the Blood besmeared her Face in a most inhuman Sort. She receiving from her Lord such unlook'd-for Welcome, cried out in a lamentable Manner, as well as she was able, began to say, 'Alas! (my dear Lord) what moveth you to this unwelcome Outrage? I call the Gods to Witness, I never did any Thing in my Life, either against your Honour or Life, or ever prostituted my Body to any Stranger's Love.' The Emperor not being thus satisfied, replied, saying, 'Thou Whore, I am too well informed of thy Proceedings; and cursed be the Day and Hour that ever I saw thy deceitful Face.' And therewithal, without any Pity, dashed her Head against the Ground, leaving her speechless, insomuch that all the Damsels her Attendants thought she had been quite bereft of Life. Upon this, there arose up in the Court a most pitiful Out-cry, which the Counsellors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, where they found the Lady in a Trance; at which disaster, all amazed, some ran to take up the dead Body of the Empress; others took upon them to speak to the Emperor, thinking thereby to stay the Fury of his undeserved Rage, whose Words unto him were as followeth; 'Alas! (dread Sovereign) what may be the Cause of this your sudden Passion, in delivering unto Danger of Death, this so modest, chaste and noble Lady, so beloved of all Degrees, and in whom was never seen the least Spark of Dishonour, neither towards you, nor any in the Empire; wherefore our present Request unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong conceived Anger against this harmless Lady.' The Emperor (nothing for all this relenting) answer'd, 'Speak no more, for I know, I see, I hear, how cunningly she hath deluded me: Therefore move no farther, for I am fully purposed to deliver her over to Death; and he or they who thereunto gain-say, I shall make him Partaker of the Death with this wicked, disloyal Strumpet.' These Words were no sooner utter'd, but up rose a worthy, wise, courageous and bold Baron, and spoke unto the Emperor after this Manner: 'Right worthy Sir, I would wish you to be well advised before you proceed further against this Lady, who is your espoused Wife, Sister to a great Monarch, namely, *Pepin King of France*, who, when he shall hear of this

Wrong done to her, will out of a courageous Heart, and brotherly Affection, muster up all his Men of War, and suddenly surprize all our Towns, Wives and Children, forgetting Mercy, and only pursuing Revenge upon us for the merciless and cruel Deeds unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other Side, that the Lady is great with Child; therefore it is dangerous so rudely to smite and wound her in this Manner, wherein you have proceeded against her.' The worthy Baron having thus ended his Advice, the Lady suddenly fell upon her Knees before the Emperor, and in Tears very submissively and lamentably thus she spoke;

'Alas! (my Lord) take Pity on an innocent Lady, for I am so free from any evil Act, as I never so much as thought any Evil against your Person or Dignity: At least, my Lord, if your Compassion be quite extinct from pitying me, yet pity the Fruit of my Body, for I am great with Child by you, of which the Gods grant me a safe Delivery. If nothing can appease your Anger towards me, then let my Body be imprisoned in some strong Tower till the Time of my Delivery; and then do with my Body what pleaseth you, so the Fruit thereof be kept safe.' In this dolorous Passion she proceeded so far, that what with her Sighs and Tears following one another, it would have grieved the stoniest Heart that ever rested in the Bosom of the vilest Tyrant that ever reigned. All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperor, who was so wholly bewitched with the false and traitorous Accusation of the Arch-Priest, that all Lenity set apart, he burst out in this Manner. 'Thou false Strumpet, the Child thou goest withal is to me no Joy, but rather Dishonour; for by thy Disloyalty and dissolute Life and Manners, in admitting a Partner in my Love, an eternal Separation is made between us. The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the Rage of the Emperor, by a common Consent removed her out of his Presence into another Chamber, shewing unto her all the Favour they could, both in Action and Gesture, altho' her fair Face was all deformed and besmeared with Blood. Having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were Attendants, fetch'd Water to wash her Face, and did all they could to revive her dying Spirit. Being thus in another Chamber, in came *Blandiman* her Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured Manner, thro' Pity the Water trickled down his Cheeks, and at last began to speak in this Manner;

'Ah! Madam, I plainly see that you are traitorously

ously handled, and wish that the Gods would throw down their malignant Curses upon that Person that hath thus purchased your extreme Miseries: but gentle Lady, take Comfort unto you, and trust me if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you back again into *France*, towards your Brother's, who gave me and my Service unto you, to attend you in all those Misfortunes: all which I will to the utmost of my Power undertake. Sweet Lady, follow my Counsel, and free yourself out of Danger; for be you assured, that if here you stay, the Emperor will prosecute Revenge upon you, and in the End bring you to a shameful Death.' Unto this the sorrowful Lady made this Reply; 'Ah! *Blandiman*, I know thy faithful Service towards me; but yet if I should follow thy Advice, and steal out of this Country secretly, it would argue me guilty of all that Infamy the Emperor throweth upon me, and thereby yield me guilty of the Deed. Believe me, Servant, I had rather die all the Deaths the World can lay upon me, than to bear the Blame of that wherein I am innocent.'

By this Time the Emperor's Choler was somewhat pacified, by Means of his Lords and Barons that attended, insomuch that he caused *Bellisant* to be quickly brought before him; when she was come, his Heart trembled and fretted with Anger that he durst not put her to Death, fearing the great Puissance and Might of her Brother King *Pepin*; and therefore burst forth into these Speeches; 'Thou false and accursed Woman, by whom my Honour is brought in Question, I take the Gods to Witness, were it not for thy Brother's Sake, the valiant *Pepin* King of *France*, I would make thee fry in the Fire, as an Example to all fair Ladies; but, for his Sake, I spare thy Life: Stand forth and hear thy Judgment; I banish thee out of my Country and Empire; expressly commanding, that without any Delay, to-morrow thou depart out of this City, and if ever thou be seen here any more, I assure thee thou shalt suffer Death, in all Extremity. - Also I straitly command, that none of my Country dare be once so hardy as to give Aid, or accompany you, save only your Servant *Blandiman*, whom you brought with you out of *France*: Go, get thee presently out of my Sight, for thou shalt never more sleep in my Bosom.' The Emperor having pronounced Sentence against her, the Empress *Bellisant*, accompanied with her Servant *Blandiman*, speedily hasted to Horse. Being thus mounted, and then passing thro' the fair City towards one of the Gates thereof, there met her People in great Multitudes of all Degrees, much la-

menting the Loss of so fair a Lady, and so good an Empress. When she came to the utmost Part, even ready to go out of the Gates of the City, there was heard such a lamentable Howling of mournful Voices, that the like before was never heard in the City of *Constantinople*. When she was out of the Walls of the City, and newly entered into the wide Fields, she began to fall into a womanly Fit of bitter Weeping, to see how shamefully and dishonourably she was handled causeless. Again, to think upon her Birth, the Imperial Dignity from whence she was fallen, as also to account the Misfortune wherein she was like to finish the Rest of her Days, drove her at last from Tears to utter her Grievs in these Words, 'Alas! in what unhappy Hour was I born, to fall from so high an Estate to so low an Object of Poverty as I am now in: Woe is me, the unhappiest among Women; now are all my Joys turned topsy-turvy, my Laughter is turned into Weeping, my Songs converted into Sighs: Instead of Cloth of Gold with which I was wont to be clothed, now I am glad of all Manner of mean Attire; my precious Stones of inestimable Value, are all taken from me, and Pearls of Tears stand over all my Garments. O you Fields and Woods, to you I make my Moan, for other Company I have none, consider my Exile, and help to bewail my Misfortune. O would the Gods had pitied my Distress, and made me the poorest among Creatures, then had not Fortune given me so foul a Fall; at least my poor Estate would never have grieved me! wherefore doth the beautiful Sun send forth his Beams on a Wretch so miserable! Why doth the Earth bear such a Creature that is composed of Calamities? It is not possible for my Tongue to tell out my Heart's Sorrow. O wretched Man (whosoever thou art) that by thy wicked Treason hath brought me to this Downfall; I may well curse thee with Bitterness of Heart, for by thee only I am made thus unfortunate. Ah! my Brother, what shouldst thou do with such a woful Wight to thy Sister? It had been better I had never been born than that I should prove such a Stain to thy Kingly House.' As she was thus complaining to her sacred Heart, the Anguish thereof struck her into a Swoon as she sat on Horseback, and was ready at that Instant to have fallen off her Horse e'er her Servant could alight to recover her, but he used all the speediest Means he could for her Recovery; at last coming to herself again, he said unto her, 'Alas! Madam, be not so discomfited, neither let Despair so far seize upon you, but trust ye that the Gods will keep and defend you, for they

are ready to aid and assist the Innocent. Having thus spoken, he suddenly spied a Fountain, towards which he and his Lady took their Way, and being come thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her over-tired Senses. Here at this Spring leave we the Lady and her Squire, and turn we now to the traitorous Arch-Priest, who was the Cause of all these treacherous and evil Practices.

CHAP. III.

How the Arch-Priest put on him the Habit of a Knight at Arms, and (being well Mounted) followed the Empress Bellifant, who was lately banished. How Bellifant, in her Banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were Valentine and Orson; and how she lost them.

THE Arch-Priest having now wrought the Banishment of fair *Bellifant*, thought with himself how he should surely accomplish his Desire, wherefore in all haste, he changed his white Rocket into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto his Side a Sword; and being thus accoutred he suddenly was mounted upon a Milk-white Steed, the fairest that could be had in all *Constantinople*: being thus mounted, he made after her with all Expedition, enquiring of all he met which way the Lady *Bellifant* was taken, who gladly told him which way she lately passed. After some few Hours riding, at last he came to a spacious Forest, and very long, taking direct way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was riding forward casting his Eye aside, he presently espied the Lady with her Servant *Blandiman*, sitting by a Fountain, full of Heaviness, lamenting her miserable Fortune; *Blandiman* using all the Means he could to comfort her. This false Priest, from his Beaver, could well perceive it to be the Lady; but by reason of his Disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch-Priest her Enemy; but coming nearer her, she soon descry'd him, and being struck with a sudden fear, spake thus unto her Servant, Alas! (*quoth she*) I well perceive this to be the false Arch-Priest, that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, lest he be come to do me further Villainy. Lady (*said Blandiman*) banish Fear, for if he come after us to do you further Harm, I will encounter him Body for Body, even as long as Life lasteth. By this Time that they had ended their Speech to each other, the Arch-Priest was alighted from his Horse to salute the Lady in all courteous Behaviour; and after

he had made himself known unto her, he began to say unto her after this Manner:

'Right dear Lady, and our late honoured Empress, since then thy case is so pitiful, as to suffer Banishment by Sentence given against thee by the Emperor: so it is, That if thou wilt give me Entertainment in thy Love, accept me into thy Favour, and grant what I have long sought for at thy Hands, I will bring it to pass that the Emperor shall again recal thy Banishment, and make thy Greatness of State shine more bright than ever before; Therefore consider well, I say, for I protest that what I offer you is only tending to your Advancement.' Ah! (*quoth the Lady*) thou disloyal and traiterous Adversary, I have no great Cause to bestow Love where my Life hath been put in Jeopardy. It is only thou that hast wrought my Overthrow, and thou it is, that maketh me to spend the Remnant of my Days in more Misery than ever Lady is able to endure. Lady (*quoth he*) utter not forth such Curses against me, for I am come to you, not to vex or trouble you, but to heap upon you more Joys than ever you as yet in all you Life enjoyed. And in speaking these Words, he bended his Body to the fair Lady, thinking to have kissed her; but *Blandiman* perceiving his Intent, suddenly started between them, and gave the Arch-Priest so mighty a Stroke that he felled him to the Earth, and with the Violence of the blow broke out one of his teeth. The Priest had no sooner recovered himself, but he suddenly drew out his Sword, which *Blandiman* perceiving, took to him a Glove which he had about him, whereupon grew a sore and dangerous Fight between them. This encounter lasted so long, that they both were wounded, but still they continued fighting, till at last it chanced a Merchant came by that way, who perceiving afar off their Encounter, cried out with a loud voice in this Manner, Lords, (*quoth he*) leave off, and shew the Cause of this your Variance, and I will endeavour to end this Controversy. Sir (*quoth Blandiman*) let us first try our Right by our Weapons, and afterwards we will be ruled by Words. The poor Lady could no longer bear Silence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth: 'Alas! (*quoth she*) if ever you pitied Woman, pity my Case; for this Man whom here you see armed, is the false, treacherous Arch-Priest, that hath followed me to rob me of mine Honour, and force me to his wicked and unsatiable Lust: also this is he that hath made a Separation between me and the Emperor, my Lord and Husband.' The Merchant hearing her lamentable Tale, pitied her Misery, and began

began thus unto the Arch-Priest; 'Sir Priest, leave off your Enterprize, and dare not so much as touch this innocent Lady, for if the Emperór did but understand this Villainy, he would soon end thy Life in Infamy, as thou well deservest.' As soon as the Arch-Priest had heard this Speech, he forsook his Combat, and fled as fast as he could thro' the Wood, for fear of being further known, being prevented of his Purpose towards the Lady, tho' he conveyed his Body out of sight, yet his Villanies were afterward disclosed: After his Departure, the Lady was forced to stay still in the Wood, all sorrowful, with her wounded Servant. The Merchant stayed with them some little time, bewailing the hard Hap of the Lady; yet comforted her, saying, 'Alas! Lady, I see that this Arch-Priest hath falsely betrayed you, and brought you in Hatred with the Emperór; but I promise you, that if I live, I will bewray all these Treacheries to the Emperór; and bring the Traitor to a shameful Death; and so taking leave, I commend you to the Gods; wishing that in these Extremities you would be patient, and comfort yourself in these your Sorrows.' So with many thanks for his aid from *Blandiman*, the Merchant departed. The Merchant having left them, *Blandiman* set the Lady upon her Horse, and himself on his; so riding together, they came unto a Lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight Days, during which time her Servant was recovered of his Wounds, and then set forward towards *France*; the Lady still sorrowful, and complaining in this Manner; 'Alas! *Blandiman*, what may my Brother and the Peers of *France* think of this, when they shall understand that I am expelled *Greece* for so dishonourable a Deed, and as a common Harlot banished from the Emperór of *Constantinople*? Alas! I am persuaded that the King my Brother will easily believe that I am guilty of the Deed, and in his Anger deliver me over to a shameful Death. Lady, (quoth he) be not discouraged, but trust in the Gods, who will revenge your Injury, and pay it home upon the Offender's Head.' During the Time of these Discourses they had passed many Countries and Regions, till at last they came into *France*, and passing by *Orleans*, they took their Way towards *Paris*, where King *Pepin* was accustomed to sojourn. So entering into a Forest near unto *Orleans*, there happened new Miseries unto this Empress, of which more hereafter ensueth.

Bellifant (as before you heard) being with Child, was suddenly overtaken in the Forest; the Time of

her delivery being come, caused her to forsake her Horse, and began to complain to her Servant in this Manner: 'Alas! (quoth she) help, help, I say, to lay me down softly under yonder great Tree; and when I am laid, make haste and find me the help of Woman wheresoever thou canst get any, for I can go no further, my Pains so much encrease upon me.'

Blandiman, her Servant, did as she commanded, and for that he knew not how to find the same Place again, he set a special Mark, that he might the readier come thither, and so betaking him to his Horse, he rode forth swiftly to seek some Woman to help this distressed Lady.

He being gone, the Lady was left comfortless, all alone, without Succour of any Creature, so that at last she was delivered of two fair Sons in the desolate Forest. These Children were no sooner come into the World, but a fresh Misery, worse than all the rest that she had endured, happened to this fair Lady, for as she lay on the Earth under the Tree, and her two Infants by her, suddenly came to her a huge Bear, most terrible to behold, and took up one of the Infants in her Mouth, and with great Pace hastened into the thickest of the Forest.

This strange and unlooked for accident frightened the distressed Lady to the Soul, that she cried out most lamentably, getting upon her Hands and Feet to hasten after the Bear, which was quickly got out of her Sight. But alas! it little availed her to make any further Pursuit, for she never came in sight of the Child, till by Miracle it was at length disclosed. So long wandered this Lady up and down, from Place to Place, weeping and crying out for her Child, that being wearied with Travel, she fell into a great Sickness, insomuch, that at last she was thereby near deprived of her Life, and immediately fell into a Swoon upon the cold Earth, as if she had yielded up the Ghost. In this Extasy leave we her, and now proceed to the other Child which she left under the Tree: It happened the same Day that her Brother King *Pepin*, had taken his Journey from *Paris* (accompanied by divers great Lords, and Barons) towards *Constantinople*, to visit his Sister *Bellifant*; and striking through *Orleans*, he entered into the same Forest wherein his banished Sister was lately delivered of her two Children; but not knowing what happened, as he passed thro' the Forest, he spied, lying under a Tree alone, the other Son of *Bellifant*, which when he saw, he said unto his Attendants, 'My Lords, by the Appointment of the Gods, see, here I have found a fair Encounter,



ter, even a Child. *By the Gods* (said the Lords) *you say Truth*. Why (said the King,) take it up and it shall be brought up at my Charge to long as it liveth; and it shall want no Manner of Attendance, but be used as if it were my own: For if it live unto Man's Estate, I'll endue it with Lands and Possessions after the most noble Manner.' And there withal calling to him one of the Squires, gave him the whole Charge thereof, saying to him on this Manner, 'Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to *Orleans*, see it Baptized, provide it a good Nurse, and let it want for nothing appertaining thereunto.' The King little expected that this Child was his Nephew.

The Squire, as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to *Orleans*, caused it to be baptized, and gave it his own Name, called *Valentine*. After he sought a Nurse for the Child, and gave it great Attendance, according to the King's Command. This done, the King proceeded on his Journey towards *Constantinople*, to see his lovely Sister *Bellisant*; but ere he could pass thro' the Forest he

B 2

chanced to meet with *Blandiman*, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her great Extremity of Child-birth. *Blandiman* spied the King, knew him, and suddenly alighted from his Horse, doing his duty unto him. The King perceiving it to be *Blandiman*, asked what News from *Constantinople*? and above the rest, how doth our Sister *Bellisant*? *Blandiman* answered, 'Most gracious Sovereign, I bring you but little tidings, yet those I bring are bitter and sharp; for amongst the rest, I must tell you strange News of your loving Sister, and how she fares: Wherefore so it is, that by Force of Treason, and false Suggestions of the cursed Arch-Priest of *Constantinople*, your Sister is banished out of the Emperor's Court and Dominions; and but for the great Mercy of the Lords of the Emperor's Court and others, she had been publicly put to Death, and burnt to Ashes in Sight of all the people.' King *Pepin* having heard this lamentable relation of *Blandiman's*, being in an exceeding Outrage, and fierce Anger, and yet sorrowful, broke out in Speech most bitter-ly

ly against her, in this Manner: 'Now, by the Gods, (quoth he) I hold the Emperor no upright Judge, in that he spared the Life of my Sister, for I swear, that if I had her here now in Possession, I would not rest till by Death I had made her an Example to all false Ladies while the World endureth.' And thereupon commanded all his Train of Lords, and others to stay their Journey, and return back again to *Paris*, for the grievous Offence of my Sister here stays my Journey. And so he departed without further asking any other Questions, but turning his Horse's Head, Sorrow overcame his Courage, and at last made him break forth into these Words: 'Ha! (quoth he) how many men are deceived in Women? Now I am utterly prevented of all my Purposes, for my only Hope rested in the Modesty of my Sister *Bellisant*; yea, in her stood all my Joys and Pleasures. Again, to have the Emperor *Alexander* still my Brother, and fast Friend at all Essays, and in all my Necessities, was the only Hope and Joy of my Heart: And now behold by her I'm disappointed, and shut out into eternal Dishonour.' And so in that Distrust and Melancholy, King *Pepin* returned towards *Orleans*. When *Blandiman* observed the Courage of the King to be thus daunted, he durst relate no further News of the Lady *Bellisant*; but leaving the King, he took his Way towards the Tree where he lately left her in great Pain of Child-birth. Being come thither, he sought her every where, but could hear no tidings of her; wherefore being sorrowful, he knew not what way to take. Being in this extasy, at last he tied up his Horse to a Thorn Tree, and began to make a narrower Search than before, wherein he was so Vigorous, that at last he espied her, finding her flat upon the Earth, and in a manner speechless, thro' the Grief that possessed her Heart for losing her Child, which the Bear had bore away from her. *Blandiman* being glad that he had now found her, kindly embraced her; and taking her up in his Arms from the cold Earth, set her upon her Feet, and spoke thus unto her: 'Alas! dear Lady and Mistress, how happened you to stray thus from the Place I left you in.'

The Lady looking upon him with a ghastly Countenance, replied thus: 'Ah, *Blandiman*, my Dolors and Distresses daily encrease upon me; for thou wert no sooner departed to get me the Help of some Womankind, but I became delivered of two Babes, when a ravenous Bear from the Forest assailed me and bore away one of them; I, tho' weak,

making what poor Shift I was able, followed that ravenous Beast, thinking by strong Hand to have recovered again my Loss, but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor (wanting my Strength) could I come back again to the Tree where I left my other Infant.' Lady (quoth he) Why, I myself but lately came from the Tree, and I am well assured that there lay no infant there, nor thereabouts. How (quoth the Lady) no Child under the Tree? With these words she was so inwardly wounded, that she fell down into a Swoon; which *Blandiman* spying, saved her what he could, and fell into sorrowful Tears, to see his Lady so extremely oppressed and overwhelmed, and at last led her towards the Tree, where she had left the Child; but when she saw the other Child also gone, you may think what Dolor of Heart the poor Lady endured; for in the midst of all which Sorrows she thus spoke: 'Alas! (quoth she) can there be in the World a more desolate Wretch? for on every Side I am encompassed with Grief, and unsupportable Sorrows. But alas! Emperor, thou art the Cause, and hast been the only Means to deliver me over, even to Death, and that wrongfully without Cause, on my Part, and only by a deceivable Counsel, hast thou bereft me of thy Company; but here I call the Gods to witness, that I never was faulty to thee in my Body, nor disobedient to thee in any Point; wherefore once again, I am forced to cry out for Vengeance on the offender's Head: First, for my Disgrace; next, for my Banishment; and lastly, for the Loss of my two Babes issued from the Blood-royal of the Emperor of *Constantinople*. But seeing all these Miseries have even tired themselves upon my very Heart, come Death, and finish what Sorrows do but prolong.' All this time *Blandiman* was Ear-witness to all these mournful Complaints, in as much as he grew weary of her Wailing, and in the best Manner he could, comforted her dying Spirits, by intreating her to desist from moaning, and betake herself to her Feet: Whereunto she gave Consent; then he, accompanied with a Woman he had brought with him, came into a neighbouring Village, where they lodged and nourished her, till she had partly recovered her Strength, and in some Measure forgot her Miseries. *Blandiman* began to break unto his Lady in this Manner: 'Lady (quoth he) it was my Chance, in looking for you in the Forest, to light upon your Brother, King *Pepin*, who demanded of me what Tidings? But his Brows were bent and full of An-

ger againſt you ; wherefore my Counſel is, that you make not towards him, for, by his Countenance, I well perceive you ſhall have but ſlender Welcome : For upon further Questions demanded and answered, ſo ſoon as he heard me tell that the Emperor had exiled you, he lightly gave Credit, that yours was the Fault, and therefore lays all the Blame upon you.' ' O (quoth the Lady) now what I moſt feared is come to paſs ; and I well perceive that I am beſet with Adverſaries on every Side : Well, be it as it will, the Emperor hath exiled me without Cauſe : What then ſhall I do ? I will never return again to *Paris*, but take my Way into ſome remote Land, where my Body, with the falſe Accuſations laid thereon, may be ſmothered ; for my Brother's Anger is grown ſo great, that he could willingly deliver me over to Death ; therefore it is better to fly and ſave my Life, than to fall into the Fury of ſo angry a Brother.' This doleful Speech ſhe delivered in Tears, which *Blandiman* perceiving, ſaid unto her, Lady, leave off your Tears ; for be aſſured of my Fidelity ; and here I offer myſelf, Life and all to be at your Service, go wither you pleaſe. Why then (quoth the Lady) ſince you are ſo reſolute, let us reſolve upon ſome ſtrange Adventure ; and therewithal paſſed forth to expoſe themſelves to future Dangers ; where now we ſhall be forced to leave them with ſorrowful Hearts, and return again to ſpeak ſomething of the Bear that carried away one of the Children.

C H A P. IV.

Of the Bear that bore away one of the Children.

THE Bear, (as you have heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no Violence, but bore it unto her Cave, which was dark and obſcure : In this Cave the old Bear had four young ones, amongſt which ſhe laid the Child to be devoured ; but mark the Chance, and you will find it at laſt miraculous ; for all this while the young Bears did it no Harm, but with their rough Paws ſtroaked it ſoftly ; the old Bear perceiving they did not devour it, ſhewed a brutiſh kind of Favour towards it, inſomuch that ſhe kept it, and gave it Suck among her young ones, the Space of one whole Year. This Child by reaſon of the Nouriſhment it received, became rough all over like a Beaſt, and as he grew in Strength, began to range up and down in the Woods, and when he met with other Beaſts would ſmite them, and got ſuch a Maſtery over them, that they began to ſhun the Place wherein he came, he was ſo ex-

treme fierce among them. And in this Beaſt-like Eſtate paſſed he the Term of fifteen Years, growing up to ſuch Strength, that ſcarce any Man or Beaſt in the Forest durſt ſtir abroad, fearing to fall into his Hands, leſt he ſhould put them to Death, and after eat their Fleſh, more like unto a ravenous Beaſt than any human Creature : His Name was called *Orſon*, becauſe a Bear had been his Nurſe, and was alſo grown rough like a Bear. This Beariſh Man lived ſo long in the Forest that none (were he ever ſo hardy) durſt abide his Preſence. The Renown of this wild Man grew ſo great, and ſpread ſo far abroad over all the realm of *France*, that they of the Country round about, chafed and Hunted him, but prevailed not, for he neither feared Weapons nor Engines, but paſſed thro' them all ſnapping them in Pieces. All this Time he abode in the Forest, you may underſtand he neither wore Garment, nor had any kind of Speech.

Here we leave the wild Man in the Forest, and look a little what became of the Lady *Belliſant*, and her Servant *Blandiman*, and we ſhall ſuddenly find them wandering and travelling through divers Lands and Countries ; the Lady ever remembering and bewailing the Loſs of her two Children, wiſhing that if it were poſſible, they might ſtill be in Safety. But in the miſt of her ſorrowful Wiſhes, yet paſſed on her wearied Journey, ſometimes by Sea, ſometimes by Land, till at length ſhe came to a Port in *Portugal*, on which did ſtand an invincible Caſtle kept by a Giant called *Ferragus*, ſo great and of ſuch Puiſſance, that there was not a Horſe to be found that could bear the living Trunk of this great Giant. It ſo happened at this Caſtle, that every ſhip that paſſed by this Port was to pay Tribute to this Giant, which he himſelf did daily come abroad to receive. At length he came unto the Ship wherein the Lady *Belliſant* and her Squire had paſſed, (for ſhe was laden with all Sorts of rich Merchandize) ſo caſting his Eyes about, he ſpied *Belliſant*, which he kindly took by the Hand, and led her into the Caſtle to his Wife (for he was married to a beautiful Lady) *Blandiman* followed his Lady alſo, fearing the Giant, but he behaved ſo noble, that he did not offer her any Violence, but preſented her to his Wife, who was filled with Joy at the preſence of ſo beautiful a Lady. The Giant having charged his Wife to uſe her and *Blandiman*, her Squire honourably. During her Abode in the Caſtle ſhe would often ſhed Tears, when ſhe be-
thought herſelf, on the Loſs of her two Children,
which

which the Lady of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best Manner she could, and even placed her next her own Person, for the Joy and Pleasure that she ever took in her Company. Within this Castle she tarried a long Time: And here we must leave her, and now return back again to tell you somewhat of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and the false Arch-Priest.

C H A P. V.

How by the Counsel of the Arch-Priest, new Customs and Taxations were raised through the City of Constantinople; and how the Treason came to Light. How the Emperor, by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King Pepin, to see the Combat fought between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant.

THE Emperor having shamefully expelled *Bellifant* his Wife, oftentimes repented him of the Fact: But by the cursed Counsel of the Arch-Priest, unto whose Words he gave such Credit continually, that what he spake was an Oracle in the ears of the said Emperor, insomuch that he continually heaped new Honours upon that traiterous Priest, advancing him above the highest in the Empire; and whatsoever he commanded was effected. At last having got all Power and Authority in his Hands, he began to enhance the Customs and Taxes of the City of *Constantinople*, which Exactions of his, against all Reason, struck even to the very Hearts of the Inhabitants. Amongst the Residue of these his forced Impositions, it happened that (according to their yearly Customs) there was held a great Mart in the City, which falls out about the Month of *September*. Hereunto resorted many People for divers Occasions, especially Merchants. The Fair or Mart-Day being come, the Emperor gave the Charge thereof unto this Arch-Priest, who accordingly provided himself, and to the same Purpose armed two hundred men to guard his own Person: Being thus accompanied, he took his Way into the City, to effect his new Charge, which the Emperor had bestowed upon him. It chanced so, that among the rest of them that sold Wares, the Merchant was there present (of whom you have heard before) namely, he that came riding by the Way whilst *Blandiman* (the distressed Lady *Bellifant*'s Squire) and the treacherous Arch-Priest were fighting: The Arch-Priest perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful lest all his Villainy should come to Light. The Presence of this Merchant much troubled the Arch-Priest, insomuch as he wished (if

it were possible) his Death, and would assuredly have effected the same by the Authority that he now had in his Hands, but still he feared some great tumult would arise thereby. Now mark what followed. This Merchant among the rest was richly furnished with all costly Wares, as Cloth of Gold, Silver-Silk, &c. whereby he received great Wealth, and took more Money than any five Merchants beside. The Fair being ended, the Arch-Priest sent forth his Officers to demand and receive his accustomed Duties due upon the Sale of those Merchandizes; one Officer came unto this Merchant, and said, 'Sir, you must Pay ten pence off every Pound that you have taken, for so it is ordained by the great Officer to whom it belongs.' The Merchant hereat being angry, said, 'Curled be the disloyal Arch-Priest, for he is the only Cause of the new raised Exactions: It had been good for all Men if he had long since had his Desert, and with shame and Infamy had ended his Days.' At which reproachful Words against the Arch-Priest, the Officer took up his Staff, and smote the Merchant on the Head, that presently the blood gushed out. The Merchant feeling the Blood about his Ears, drew his Sword, and struck so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his Feet for dead. Upon this arose a great Rout through the Fair, insomuch that the rest of the Officers coming up to help their Fellow, took the Merchant, and brought him before the Arch-Priest: The Arch-Priest glad of this Opportunity, would suddenly have put him to Death, but the Merchant appealed to Justice to have his Cause tried by law. The Arch-Priest fearing the People, sent him away to the Emperor, for nothing could satisfy him but his Life: But mark in seeking the Life of the Merchant, he purchased his own Death, as hereafter followeth: The Arch-Priest caused the Merchant to be brought into the Emperor's Palace, where he in Person sat as Judge. The Emperor being set, the Arch-Priest brought his Advocate to plead his Cause, which was to this Effect: That the Merchant had committed Murder; and also had spoken opprobrious Words against the said Arch-Priest.

The Advocate having ended his Accusation, the Merchant suddenly fell on his Knees before the Emperor and said, 'Mighty and most excellent Prince, out of your Benignity, give me but Audience to be heard before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a Matter of great Importance, that touches your Person even in the highest Degree of Treason.' Say on, says the Emperor. 'Migh-

ty Emperor, and my Lords all, I would advise you to make fast the Gates round about this your Palace, that none depart from this Place.' The Emperor did as he requested. Then said the Merchant with a loud Voice, 'Lords, Barons and Knights, all you that love the true Honour of the Emperor, and the triumphant Reign of his Person, attend my Words; the time is come that the Treason of the cursed Arch-Priest will now be revealed and come to Light: Then thus, great Emperor, this cursed Man, whom you have ever nourished and brought to great Honour, hath deceived your Trust; for he it is that hath wrought all the Discord betwixt you and your virtuous Lady, whom you have banished both from your Bed, Court, and Country; and by whom you have received more Dishonour than ever he reaped Honour from you; for it had been his Part most of any to have advanced your Renown, and to have preserved your Honour; but contrarily, he hath made you, my dread Lord, infamous by these his wicked Projects, and brought upon you great Scandal among all Nations; for he secretly, and underhand made Love to your Empress, but she denied him, and he perceiving that there was no likelihood to accomplish his Desire, it drove him into a thousand Fears, lest this his disloyal Act should come to Light, and therefore devised to falsify unto your Ears her faithful Love unto your Bed.' Of all which his false Accusations, I say here before you, and all your Lords and Barons, that he lieth like a Traitor; and for the more Approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the Truth of what these Eyes of mine were Witness: It happened on a Day after the Banishment of the Empress, as I was riding about my Affairs, I chanced to travel thro' a Wood; at last passing along the Way, I found this treacherous Priest transformed out of the habit of his Priesthood into the shape of a Knight, even armed at all Points ready for Combat with the Enemy. Drawing nearer, I beheld him in Fight with another Man unarmed, which at last I found to be *Blandiman*, Squire to the banished Lady, who conducted her in her Exile. I perceiving they encountered one another so fiercely, began to call unto them to give over their Fight; but they little regarded what I said. I did perceive the Lady piteously Weeping, and at last said unto me thus: 'Gentle Merchant, and kind Friend, lend me thine Aid against this treacherous Arch-Priest, that seeks by force to rob me of mine Honour. This is he, and only he, by

whom I am banished from my Emperor's Bed and Country. With that I put Spurs to my Horse, and ran between them to separate them, which this Arch-Priest perceiving, suddenly fled into the Wood, being fully assured that I had knowledge who he was. Noble Emperor, it had been my Part to have revealed this long before, but I durst not open my Mouth unto you, for fear his Greatness would outsway my Truth, and so have brought myself to an untimely Death.'

The Emperor having heard this Tale sighed, and at last fell into Tears, in which tears he turned him unto the Arch-Priest, relating his Disloyalty in this Manner: 'Ah, thou false Servant (quoth he) have I ever studied to do thee Honour, and exalt thee in high Dignities, and hast thou requited all my Love and Trust with Disloyalty and Treason? Well, I have seen now what I ever mistrusted, thou hast made me of all Men the most unhappy; but it is not so much thy Fault as mine own, thy Treason hath bewitched me: In an evil Hour I gave Credit to thy false-speaking Tongue, and thereby deserve to carry the Brand of my own Folly.' The Arch-Priest seeing the Emperor thus distempered, began to entreat his Highness not to be so impatient, neither to give Credit to this slanderous Tale that the Merchant had commenced against him: For (quoth he) he beliest me; and I am no way Guilty of that wherewith he Accuseth me. Thou liest falsely (quoth the Merchant) thou canst not excuse thyself in what I have charged thee withal: And if thou stand still in the Denial, I challenge thee by single Combat to maintain the Truth, and try my Quarrel: And hereunto I throw down my Gage, and withal tender my Body thereunto, to make good what I have here spoken: And more than that, e'er Night shut in, I will deliver thy Body to Death, or yield myself vanquished. The Emperor seeing the Merchant so resolute to stand to the Trial of the Combat, he said, 'Arch-Priest, it is Time that either thou quit thyself by answering this Challenge, or yield thyself guilty of what hath been laid to thy Charge.' The Arch-Priest replied in this Manner: 'Mighty Emperor, I must let you understand, that to answer the Merchant's Challenge, or take up Arms, is contrary to my Place and Calling, for I am a sacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay (quoth the Emperor) in this Case no Excuse is to be admitted, but you must either fight, or yield yourself a Traitor to our Crown and Dignity. At these Words

Words the Arch-Priest was somewhat troubled in Mind, yet at last he was fain to accept the Combat, because the Emperor charged him so deeply: And besides he could have no Excuse admitted. So the Emperor commanded them into safe Keeping, till such Time as he had sent Letters to King *Pepin* of *France*: But in the Conclusion, the Traitor had his Desert, as hereafter followeth.

The Day of the Combat being appointed, and the Field prepared, Tidings came to the Emperor that King *Pepin* was come to *Rome*, to the Aid of the Pope against the Infidels. The Emperor hearing thereof, by the grave Counsel of the Lords, dispatched Ambassadors thither with Command to bring King *Pepin* to *Constantinople*, meaning thereby to make him an Eye-witness of those Contentions, and the Cause of this Combat, which was to prove the Arch-Priest a Traitor, and also hold the Emperor excused, in that he had by his false Accusations banished his Empress. The Ambassadors thus dispatched, you must imagine that after a long Travel, at last they came to *Rome*, where they found King *Pepin*, as before was told them. King *Pepin* having heard of their coming, gave them Entertainment appertaining to their several Degrees; all which being done, the Ambassadors thus spake: Great Lord, we present thee these Letters from *Alexander* your Brother, the Emperor of *Constantinople*, our Lord and Master, of which we entreat a speedy Answer. King *Pepin* took the Letters graciously, and read them, and having thoroughly considered the Contents, with a loud Voice he said: My Lords, by the Gods, here is much Matter of Tidings, and also of great Admiration. The Emperor greets me well, and sends me word that my Sister *Bellifant*, his betrothed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully banished, and that by reason of a false Arch-Priest, unto whom he gave too much Trust; which Priest, for these his treasonable Facts, is accused by a Merchant; and for Trial of the Truth of this his Accusation, will put him in Jeopardy of Life, by single Combat in open Field, Body to Body, with this treacherous Arch-Priest. Now it is so fallen out, that the Day and Place is ready for the Trial of this Fact, whereby I shall be fully satisfied, whether my Sister hath been guilty of that wherewith she hath been charged, and most shamefully cast forth into Banishment. Upon all which, I vow by my Crown and Dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered her this Indignity without just Cause, That I will be

avenged in the extreamest Manner that War can thunder against him.

Having ended his Speech unto the Lords, in Presence of the Ambassadors, he commanded with Speed that every Man should address himself to accompany him to *Constantinople*, to behold the Manner of this Fight between the Merchant and the Arch-priest. The Day of his Departure from *Rome* being come, he takes his Way towards *Constantinople*; where, after some few Days Travel he safely arrived. The Emperor hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made Triumph to welcome him; for all were filled with Joy at his Approach.

The Emperor mounted on Horseback, richly accompanied, marched out of the City to meet his Brother King *Pepin*. At last they met; but the Emperor overcome with Sorrows and Tears, at the Remembrance of *Bellifant*, could not utter a Word. On the other side King *Pepin* being fiercely angered at what had happened to his Sister, gave no Respect unto the Emperor's Tears, but proudly began to attack him in this Manner: 'Emperor (quoth he) leave off your Lamentations, and shake off these Weeds of Sorrow, that you seem to wear for my Sister; for he that hath a Harlot for his Wife, I account him to grieve at her Misbehaviour; and since my Sister hath proved such a one, let her go and take care of herself; she is not worthy of so much as one Tear from such an Eye of Majesty.'

Nay (said the Emperor) speak not Evil against your Sister; for I am now fully persuaded that she is composed of all Virtue and Honesty, and that against all Equity I have banished her out of my Country. Think you so now? (quoth King *Pepin*) then are you worthy of a double Shame, and you do bewray unto the World your Weakness, and what great Foolishness remains in you, when as by the Report of one Man, and that a Traitor too, you would with such Rigour proceed against an innocent Lady, and so suddenly (like a common Harlot) throw her out into Banishment, Shame, and Dishonour, being of the Blood Royal of *France*.

The Emperor hearing the King to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful, and said unto him in this Manner: *Alas! my Lord, do not thus follow me with Wrath and Anger, but rather turn your Tongue upon some milder Saying, for to that Intent I have sent for you, that your own Eyes may be Witnesses of the Truth. 'Tis true* (quoth King *Pepin*) *but it is all too late what you now say, for you have de-*
livered

livered over my Sister to the World's Infamy, and what is more, even to Banishment, and (for ought I know) to Death itself; for I know not whether I shall ever behold her Face again or no: Fy, fy, that you being so great a Person should be so affectionately borne away, to give such sudden Judgment against an innocent Lady. I confess one might commit a foul and dishonourable Act, but Repentance is able to make Amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renown; for that once lost, whether it be right or wrong, is never to be recovered. Again, how little have you esteemed the Honour of my Kingly Office, judge you, when first without Deliberation, and next without any Knowledge given me, you proceeded against my Sister: I make it plain against you, that Envy towards her and me was the Cause of this false and unjust Wrong, done against us.

Whilst these Words past betwixt them, they were now entered Constantinople, where with great Joy and Gladness they were received by the Inhabitants. The Emperor would have King Pepin to have lodged with him in his Palace, but the King denied, and caused his Train to lodge in the City, and he himself also. Then the Emperor caused many Presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them; for King Pepin thought of nothing but the Dishonour done unto his Sister, and that the rather, for the whole City accounting her the fairest, the most virtuous, and the chasteest Lady in all the World, and that it was by Injustice and Treason she was banished.

CHAP. VI.

How the Merchant and Arch-Priest encountered at the Place appointed, about the Clearing of the Lady Bellisant: And what glorious Victory did betide the Merchant. How King Pepin, after the Combat, returned into France, and after sailed to Rome, to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.

NOW was the Day appointed come, for the Combat between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant; wherefore every Thing was made in readiness according to the Command of the Emperor. At last came both the Combatants into the Field, and presented themselves before the Emperor; being both before the Emperor, his Attendants, Knights and others, and the Arch-Priest armed in a most sumptuous Armour of Proof, imboss'd with Gold and Pearl, which made such a glittering Show, that it dazzled the Eyes of the Beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-Priest came forth into the Field, and took his Place appointed him at the

one End of the Lifts: The Emperor beholding the glorious Show that the Arch-Priest made in his Arms, called forth to the Merchant, causing him first to kneel down, and in the Presence of the Assembly, dubbing him Knight, he commanded that a most rich Armour should be put upon him in the Presence of King Pepin, who, during the Time he was arming, promised the Merchant, if he overcame the Arch-Priest, to advance him to great Livings, and high Authority. These two Adversaries being in Readiness, and each having their Blazon about their Necks, their Horses were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give Battle. The Emperor gave strict Charge unto all his Officers of Arms, to have a special Eye unto the Arch-Priest, for Fear lest he, on a sudden, should fly the Field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their Lives. The Merchant thus mounted, and his Sword girt to him, first entered the Lifts, after whom entered such a Multitude of People, that they were numberless. Then after came the Arch-Priest, sumptuously accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great Honours and Dignity. The Combatants thus both entered the Lifts, ready to charge one another: King Pepin being there in Person, called out aloud unto the Merchant, saying unto him; My Friend, the Gods give thee Victory against this false Traitor, I vow unto thee before this Assembly, (so I may but find out the Truth of my Sister Bellisant) notwithstanding the great Advancement that the Emperor hath promised, to take thee into France, and make thee a Companion with the best in my Kingdom. The Merchant gave the King great Thanks, and said, Dread King, I doubt not but this Night to make this traiterous Arch-Priest confess that he hath treacherously sought the Destruction of your Sister. Then came a Herald, administering to them both an Oath; and so clearing the Lifts, left the Champions to their Fortunes. Now are both the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Marshals of the Field brought each of them a Spear, which they no sooner had received but they put Spurs to their Horses, and ran with such Violence together, that their Spears were broken in their Hands: Then they set forward to another Course, charging each other with their Swords, in such a violent Manner, that with their Fury they rebounded from their Armour to the Ground, cutting off whole Quarters of their Corsets, and left them as a Prey for those that attended the Fight.

The Arch-Priest seeing himself so stiffly matched gave over the Fight till towards the Evening (for such was the Custom of the Country, that in any challenged combat, either Party might refuse to follow the Fight so eagerly, but that they might have a breathing Time, so the Combatant was yielded to be vanquished before Sun-set, or else abide the Sentence of Death) thinking thereby to weary out the Merchant; which the Merchant perceiving, he prepared to receive the Arch-Priest courageously when he encountered him; which not being long after, the Merchant redoubled his Strokes, that he smote off one of his Ears and his Steel Habergeon, and with the Violence of the Blow, the Merchant's Sword fell from his Hand, which the Arch-Priest seeing, put Spurs to his Horse, and charged him with such Violence, that he ran against the Merchant's Horse and thrust out one of his Eyes; the Horse feeling himself hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and prancing so furiously, that he unhorfed his Rider; and so hard was the Fortune of the Merchant, that in the Fall, his Foot hung in the Stirrup, whereby he was brought in great Danger, the Horse hurrying him along the Field, that all were very sorrowful to behold this lamentable Spectacle, and with the Amazement thereof, grew desperate in their Hopes. King *Pepin* was so discouraged at this disastrous Chance, that the Tears trickled down his Cheeks, uttering many silent Ejaculations against the Unkindness of Fortune.

Now that which was most miraculous was, all this Time that the Merchant was dragged up and down the Field, the Arch-Priest could not force his Horse to come up unto the Merchant, but fled out to and fro, whereby he could not make a Prey of the Merchant as he intended to do. But see, at last the Merchant's Horse fell down, by which Means he got his Leg out of the Stirrup, and at last got on his Feet like a valiant and hardy Champion. The Arch-Priest perceiving that the Merchant had recovered his Legs, came running with strong Violence upon him, and thereby gave him five or six Blows upon his Shoulder, that the poor Merchant was even astonished; and at last was forced to draw back to recover Breath, and in a very little Space finding himself somewhat relieved, he suddenly gave a fresh Assault upon the Arch-Priest, against whom he struck with such Violence, that the Sword fell out of his Hand; but he had first so wounded him, that the Blood ran

thro' his Armour upon the Earth. This so vexed the Arch-Priest that he grew mad with Rage, and turned his Horse upon the Merchant, designing to over-run him; but the Merchant observing his Drift, prepared to receive him, drawing a long Knife, punched it into the Belly of his Horse, so that the Horse being thus wounded, began to fling and leap, insomuch that the Arch-Priest was in Danger to be unhorfed, and striving to save himself, he lost his Shield: The Merchant spying him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the Shield, and threw it away, so that he could no more recover it; that done, he made again towards his Horse, and smote him into the Belly with his Sword, which brought the Horse and his Rider down to the Ground. The Arch-Priest being thus unhorfed, was very nimble to recover himself, but the Merchant watching all Opportunities, gave him such a Blow, that as he began to rise, he laid him flat again upon the Ground, and leaping upon him, pulled off his Helmet, thinking to have smitten off his Head. The Arch-Priest seeing himself in such Danger, said, *Alas! my Friend, I pray thee take Pity on me, and give me Leave to confess myself, for I yield myself vanquished.* The Merchant hereat was very courteous, and granted to him his Desire: The Priest had no sooner got on his Feet, but clasping the Merchant in his Arms, threw him on the Ground, and leaped on him in a most sudden Outrage, saying thus to the Merchant, 'I have thee now at Advantage, and from my Hands thou shalt not escape with Life, if what I shall command thee thou do not effect.' *Ha!* replied the Merchant, *hast thou thus betrayed me? Well, it is so that I now stand at thy Mercy, and that thou mayest do with me what pleaseth thee; therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my Life I shall gladly do it.* Then thus go with me before the Emperor and King *Pepin*, and there openly and in the Hearing of all Men, testify that thou falsely accused me, and that thereby I may be cleared of those false Accusations, which by this Means have been brought upon me; all of which if thou accomplish, I swear and promise thee to save thy Life; and besides be a Means unto the Emperor and his Brother, to get thee Peace and Forgiveness of this thy foul Fact, committed both against them and me also: Nay more, I swear unto thee by the Faith of a Gentleman, and by the Order of Priesthood, to give thee a Niece of mine in Marriage, who shall be to thee rich, fair, and of pleasant Behaviour;

haviour; and to conclude, thou shalt be made more honourable and wealthy. Therefore advise thyself now, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable Life, or miserable in an untimely Death.

The Merchant having heard the Arch-Priest's Tale, was upon a sudden exceeding sorrowful, and not without Cause; but not knowing what to resolve upon, he at length thus answered: *Sir Priest, your Arguments are grounded upon good Reason, therefore I am ready to accomplish your Desires, so that you will be as mindful of your Promises. In me (quoth the Arch-Priest) there shall appear no Fault. Why then (quoth the Merchant) let us set forward to the Emperor, and there will I set thee free from all those Accusations heretofore I have exhibited against you.* It is well, *(said the Arch-Priest)* wherefore rise up then, and let us go together. The Merchant had no sooner got on his Feet, but he began again afresh to open all the Treason of the Arch-Priest, even to his Teeth; and again he took Courage, and now would requite him in the same Sauce he had served him before, and suddenly clasping the Arch-Priest in his Arms, he threw him down, and having him at Advantage, he said thus, *Arch-Priest, seeing you have taught me to play my Part, therefore think no more upon Confessions; for you shall confess to me or none.* The Arch-Priest seeing himself beaten at his own Weapons, began again to entreat, but the Merchant nothing regarding his Words, presently put out his Eyes, and gave him so many deadly Blows, that he made him sure enough from arising to do him any Harm. Then the Merchant called the Marshals of the Field, and said; *Lo here you see that I have done my best Endeavours against the Arch-Priest: If he be vanquished, say so, for I am sure I have brought him to such a Pass, that I may kill him outright if I please; therefore my Request now unto you is, that you would conduct Alexander Emperor of Constantinople, and King Pepin of France hither, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be Ear Witnesses of the Confession which the Arch-Priest shall make unto them, and also hear in what unjust Manner he waged the Combat against me.*

The Marshals did according to the Request of the Merchant; and then presently came the Emperor with King Pepin, and all the Nobles, even to the Place where the Arch-Priest lay fully vanquished. Then the Emperor demanded of him the Truth, which the Arch-Priest confessed, declaring the whole Plot of his Villanies, and how by his Means the Emperor had been wrongfully banished. When the

Standers by heard all the whole Matter, a Multitude of Tears were shed; but especially the Emperor, whose Lamentations were so violent, that all that were about him wept with great Bitterness. Now if the Emperor was sorrowful, what may you think of King Pepin her Brother: Alas! it was not without great Cause, when they saw and knew that by too much Trust given to a treacherous Arch-Priest, they had lost the Lady *Bellissant*. Between these two great Princes, there was great Joy and great Sorrow: Joy to King Pepin that his Sister was found innocent and blameless: Sorrow to the Emperor that he should be the only Means (by false Suggestions) of his Wife's Banishment. At last, Lamentations were laid apart, when they had heard the Confession of the Arch-Priest's Treason, the Emperor consulted with his Council, that the Traitor should be put into a Cauldren of hot burning Oil, alive, and so to finish his miserable Days as he had traiterously sought the Life of that innocent Lady. Execution was suddenly to be done, and it being done, the Assembly of the People of all Sorts were dismissed. Afterwards King Pepin withdrew himself to his Lodgings; but the Emperor sorrowful for what had happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himself, began to say; *Alas! dear Brother, I am sorrowful for my Error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable Crime against my Lady your Sister, and these noble Knights your Attendants: Let it suffice, that I behold my own Folly; What shall I say? I can but crave Pardon for my Fault, and give myself into your Hands, to do to me whatsoever pleaseth you. And for a further Satisfaction, I render up into your Hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining; for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not Master of my own Affections. Take it I say, for I will be no longer served, but during the rest of my Life, will become a Servant to thee, or any, for no better have I deserved.*

King Pepin perceiving the Emperor so passionate, and so humble-minded, kindly took him from the Ground, and before all his Lords, freely forgave him all his Trespases. So that before they parted, there was a general Peace concluded, and a speedy Course taken to send into all Parts of the World, to seek the distressed Lady *Bellissant*. Thus all Things settled in Order, King Pepin prepared to take his Leave of the Emperor. King Pepin having taken his Leave of Constantinople, after a long Journey, arrived in France, and so to Orleans, to refresh his tired Spirits, tossed too and fro in Melancholy and heavy

heavy Cogitations, for the woful Mitchenance befallen unto his Sister *Bellisant*. Being thus safely arrived, and seated at *Orleans*, the King was right joyful, that at last he had attained the Place he so much desired, by Reason that it was one of the goodliest Forests in the Realm. Being come thither, he caused great Banquets to be made for his Welcome, which was accordingly performed. In the Midst of the Feastings and Revellings, the Squire that had Charge of the Orphan *Valentine*, took and presented him before the King, saying; Dread Sovereign! lo here, I present you the poor Orphan that your Majesty found in the Forest of *Orleans*, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at my Expence, dread Sovereign, but your own. My Liege, the Reason why I make tender of him to you at this time is, because he is growing to Mans Estate; and so, may it please your Majesty, it is time to dispose of him as you please. The King having heard the Words of the Squire, called this Orphan (named *Valentine*) unto him, and took him by the Hand, and moved divers Questions unto him, all which he answered with much Modesty, and great Wisdom; and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cup-board of Plate should be given unto him: Moreover, (*said the King*) I command that this Orphan, *Valentine*, be dearly preserved and kept; for you may perceive I respect him above common Love: I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished and kept with my Daughter *Eglantine*; she is born fair, wise and well endowed with all the richest Gifts of Nature. The King having given this Command, it was accomplished, inasmuch, that they were both under the Government of one and the same Nurse, and had one and the same Attendants. Yea, every Way they joy'd one in the Company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a Kind of Lamentation till they came together again; but especially the King's Daughter, who pondered on the prudent Carriage of the Orphan, that she became in Love with him, inasmuch, that his Absence brought her into a thousand Fears, and drove her disturbed Thoughts into many Doubts and Jealousies.

Now *Valentine* was ever practising himself in Feats of Arms, as Horses, Armour, Juits and Tournaments, still exposing himself to all Dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the Inclination of this Youth, allotted unto him what his Heart desired, and furnish'd him with Armour, Horse, Lands,

Revenues, and made him Lord of rich Possessions.

Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court many secret Mutterings, whereby many People fretted so fore in Envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful Words against him, saying, that he was at the best, but a poor, base Foundling, without any known Parents or Friends, of no gentle or noble Stock, and such like. Which when *Valentine* heard, he could take no other Revenge but sit down and weep; whose Tears the fair *Eglantine* perceiving, would in a tender Woman-like Affection accompany him, even pouring forth her Tears also for Company. At length when he saw Tears little availed, he began to forsake it, and taking Heart, bore himself like a Man amongst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and gentle Frame, that he gained the Love of all Sorts and Degrees, as well Nobles as Inferiors. *Valentine* thus growing up in the Love of the Court, all this while his Brother *Orson* runs in the Forest, all rough and covered with Hair, like a Bear, and leading the Life of a Beast; where we will leave him a while, and return unto the Affairs of King *Pepin*. It so chanced that there came into *Orleans* divers Ambassadors from the Pope, demanding Aid against the *Sarazens*, Enemies of the holy Faith, who had lately taken the City of *Rome* by Violence: King *Pepin* understanding hereof, by divers Letters received, addressed himself and his Powers to make Resistance against the common Enemy, and among the Rest of his worthy Followers, he ordained this young *Valentine* a chief Commander. Fair *Eglantine* hearing that *Valentine* should make one, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful, for that she loved him more than any other Creature, and secretly sent a Messenger unto him to come and speak with her: And when he came, she sighing, said unto him: *Alas! Valentine, my Love, now I am quite bereft of all Joy; for I perceive you will betake yourself to a dangerous War: Gentle Love, leave me not so desolate; would to the Gods that I had neither Father nor Friend in the World to contradict my Will, then shouldst thou soon perceive how my Affection stands to thy Person; for if Wishes might avail, - I swear (by the Gods) thou art the only Man I would join myself unto in the Bands of Marriage; and then shouldst thou be the King of France, and I Queen.* The young Man hearing her idle Imaginations, said, *Madam, leave these womanish Dotages, you know I am no Person fitting your Estate; I am but a poor Foundling,*

Foundling, that your Father hath caused a long Time to be nourished for Charity-sake; I am no Way fitting for you, or the meanest Damsel attending your Person, make your Choice elsewhere, and join Royal Blood unto yours; and so with all Duty I take my Leave, and commend you to the Gods. Having thus ended his Speech, away he goes, leaving the poor Lady heavy and desolate, in the Midst of Mourning.

By this Time the King, and all his Retinue were in Readiness to depart, and taking their Way from Orleans towards Rome, they went through a mighty Forest; and being entered, the King called the Lords and Barons together, and said unto them; My Lords, it is not unknown unto you, that in these Woods (as Report goeth) there liveth a strange Monster, a wild Man, much feared of Passengers, which Spectacle of Man's Shape I long to behold, before I venture out any farther on our intended Voyage to Rome. The Lords generally consented, and the Chace was suddenly appointed. Having entered the Woods, they chased several Sorts of wild beasts, and overcame them; but as for Orson, the wild Man, none durst venture the finding forth of him, save only his Brother *Valentine*, (but he knew nothing of Fear) who followed still the Chace, hoping at last both to find and fight him also. Every Way they begirt the Wood, some one Way and some another; the King himself venturing so far, that he came before a Cave, dark and obscure, where the wild Man used to hide himself. Orson perceiving the King, rushed out upon him, and caught him within his Nails (which were long and crooked) and in a rough and ravenous Manner cast him on the Ground. The King, thus suddenly surprized by a Savage, never looked for Life, but in a piteous Manner, cried out for Help, and was seconded by a valiant Knight at Arms, who spying the King to be almost strangled, suddenly drew his Sword to run the wild Man through. Orson, perceiving the glittering Sword, left the King, and ran furiously upon the Knight, took him in his Arms and overthrew him, Horse and all: The Horse, sorely affrighted, got up again, and in a mad Fit ran up and down the Forest; but as for the Rider (though a Knight at Arms) Orson held him so fast with his Fangs and Talons, that at last he pulled him in Pieces. In the mean Space the King escaped; and meeting Part of his Company, related to them the great Danger he had escaped, and the fearful Death of the Knight. These Tidings much amazed the Rest of the Company; yet being

manfully resolved, they join'd themselves together, and marched toward the Cave, either to take Orson alive, or to put him to Death in the Cave. But being come thither, they found the Knight dead, and torn to Pieces; but Orson they could not find, for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered by his Brother *Valentine*, of whose Proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the King, perceiving their Labour lost, gave over the Chace, and set forward towards Rome. After this the King ranked his Forces in Battle Array; and the great Ensign of France was given to one called *Mylan Dougler*, a very valiant Prince, and a wise Leader, so that he and his two Brethren *Geruar* and *Samson*, had the whole Command of the Forces that then were marching towards Rome. When they were come unto Rome, King *Pepin* desired Battle, and would fain understand the State that the City now stood in, under the conquest of the *Sarazens*: but it was told him that he should not be too inquisitive about those Affairs, for the Admiral of the *Sarazens* had surprized the City, and put Multitudes to the Sword, and had spoiled and defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their heathenish Gods; and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Archbishops, Bishops, Priors, Monks, Friars and all the Ecclesiastical Persons to serve at their heathenish Altars, and to sacrifice to their Devils, after the Custom of the Heathens. When King *Pepin* understood thereof, he was enraged to hear that the Christians were thus captivated by Heathens; wherefore he removed his Camp nearer to the City, and there having assembled all his Forces, he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a sudden Assault; for his Fury was so great against these heathenish *Sarazens*, that he vowed Revenge upon them; but taking better Advice, he reserved himself and his Army for a Season. What after befel shall be delivered at large, when fit Occasion serveth our Purpose.

C H A P. VII.

How King Pepin besieged Rome; and how Valentine justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.

KING *Pepin* being thus come to Rome, besieged it, and after some few Days spent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and Men of War, and began to speak unto them in this Manner; My Lords and Followers, you well know that this heathenish

thenish Admiral, Enemy to the Christian Faith and Church of Rome, hath put many Christians to the Sword, and violently trodden under Foot all such as withstood his Power: therefore it is our Duties to commiserate their Estate that are thus overthrowen, and to try the Fortune of a Battle against those heathenish Pagans; and either drive them out of the City, or leave our Carcasses dead for a Prey, as many have done before. Wherefore I King Pepin, resting upon this Resolution, would fain find out a Man to bear unto the proud Admiral a Letter of Defiance in my Name. King Pepin having finished his Speech, there was none among them made any Answer. At length Valentine seeing all stand mute, stepped forth before the King, and began to speak in this Manner, Mighty Sovereign, so you be pleased to give me Leave, I shall undertake the Message, and shall not fear to speak both unto the Pagan Admiral, and the whole Host of the Pagans, were their Multitudes twice as many as they be, and my Return shall make Proof that I have done my Message, both with Honour and Advantage to your Majesty. The King seeing Valentine thus so forward, and of such an undaunted and valiant Resolution, was right joyful; and all those of his princely Train greatly marvelled at his magnanimous Spirit. Whereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of Defiance, and deliver the same to Valentine. Valentine prepared himself thereunto, and no sooner had received the Letter, but he took Leave of the King and all his Train, and being bravely mounted, he took his Way towards Rome, and so to the Place where the Admiral lay. Coming there, he came before the Admiral, and saluted him after this Manner: *The Gods preserve the noble and puissant King Pepin, my Lord and Sovereign: and Mahomet, whom thou servest, save and defend thee, redoubted Admiral.* When Valentine had thus spoken, the Admiral roused from his Chair, and with fierce and frowning Brow, replied thus unto him: *Messenger return. And get thee out of my Sight, and say thus unto King Pepin, will him either to renounce his Faith, and believe in Mahomet, or let him look for no other Sentence than Death; for I'll destroy him together with all his Lands and Kingdom. Get thee gone, and make here no longer abode; Go, I say, reply not a Word, for my Heart is enraged that so long I suffer thee. Again I tell thee, that for thy Part, thou hast committed a haughty Enterprize, thus to enter my Palace, to deliver any such Message unto me: Wherefore I*

assure thee, by the Height of my Majesty, that if I did assuredly know that what thou hast done were through Pride of heart and Insolence, thereby to make a Mock at our Majesty, thou should never return to King Pepin, to carry an Answer to thy proud Master's Letters.

Valentine hearing these furious Words sounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid; wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, he mildly said; *High and mighty Emperor, do not imagine, that by Pride I am come before you; for when you shall understand the Manner of my coming, you will be astonished thereat.* Why then (quoth the Admiral) say on, tell how thou art come, for I swear by Mahomet, I shall take great Pleasure in hearing thee relate thine Enterprize. Then (said Valentine) Sir, so it is that I was accused to King Pepin for a Coward, and that since I came to this War, I should secretly have stolen away from the Camp and returned again into France: for which, great Admiral, the King had me in Disgrace, and vowed the next Morning to smite off my Head. I perceiving myself in this Danger, sought rather to save my Life, than to lose both Life and Honour, and therefore gave it forth throughout the whole Camp, that I would come unto your Court to defy you on the King's Behalf, and therewithal that I would challenge you to break three Spears with me in single Combat, to try your valiancy, and to win lost Honour that I before told unto you: Wherefore my Request is, that your Greatness would grant me my Request, otherwise I dare never return again, lest the King put me to Death. The Admiral hearing this pitiful Tale of Valentine, said unto him; Son, I do swear by Mahomet, thou shalt not be refused, but at this Instant I offer thee the Jufts; and to the End that those Frenchmen that lye in Siege before the City might have a Sight thereof, I will ordain the Place of justing to be without the City. Valentine humbly thanked him, and in Token of his Acceptance and unfeigned Love, he fell down and kissed the Feet of the Admiral. Valentine grew into great Favour at the Admiral's court: but yet it often troubled his Mind that he could not know who were his Parents. But while he bestowed his wandring Thoughts here, the Admiral said thus unto him: Fair Son, methinks you are very pensive. 'Tis true (quoth he) and not without Cause, for I am afraid that I shall be slain in those Jufts; wherefore my Request is, that I may have a Confessor to give me Absolution for my Sins. Then the Admiral commanded that a Priest should

should be brought him. The Priest being come, said unto *Valentine*: Now confess unto me. *Valentine* getting the Priest aside, and being together, he said thus unto him; Sir, you are a Christian Priest, and you ought most to defend the Christian Faith, wherefore hearken to what I shall tell you, for it is a Thing that requireth great Secrecy. Thus it is; You know this Day I am to just with the heathenish Admiral, the greatest Enemy to Christian People: Now I am well assured that a great Number of the Sarazens will issue forth of the City to be Eye-witnesses of those Justs to be held without the City. Therefore you shall give Warning to all Christians to keep within the Walls, arming themselves in a Readiness, and closely keep it from the Ears of the Pagans; so when the Pagans are come forth to behold the Justs, the Christians shall suddenly surprize the Guards that keep the Gates, and if any Mutiny arise, let them keep out those that are out, and send a Messenger to King *Pepin* of what is done, that he with his Army may come unto them that are without, whilst these within are set on by the armed Christians, so begirting them on every Side, that in the End we may make such a Slaughter of them, that the Christians may receive both their City in Peace, and their former Liberty. So having ended his Speech, the Priest departed.

The Admiral commanded *Valentine* to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them Charge he should be honourably attended at the Board. Being set among many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his, named *Salatas*, commanding him to see *Valentine* as well armed in all Points as himself; and moreover charged his Nephew to deliver unto *Valentine* the best Horse in his Stable. *Salatas* having received his Command from his Uncle the Admiral, took *Valentine* and led him into a fair Hall: being come thither, he caused to be laid before him divers Armours, willing him to make Choice of the best. *Valentine* cast his Eyes upon them all, at last appointed the Armour wherewith he would be armed, and making himself ready as fast as he could, he approached down into the outer Court, where he was attended with his Horse, ready to put his Feet into the Stirrup. Being come down out of the Hall, he presently mounted his Horse; the Admiral issuing likewise ready armed, out of his privy Place. Being thus armed, they took their Way towards the chief Gate of the City of *Rome*, for on

that Side King *Pepin* had laid his Siege. When they were both in the Field, *Valentine* hung his Shield about his Neck, in which he wore a Heart waving in a Field of Silver, and on one Side a Tree, all which did signify that he was found in a Forest, and were the same Arms King *Pepin* bestowed on him. The Champions being entered the List, great was the Clamour of the French in Joy of *Valentine*; the Sound whereof the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued out of the City to behold the triumphant Justs.

The Frier having played his Part among the Christians within the City, presently after the Pagans were gone out to behold these Triumphs, prepared themselves to take Possession of the Gates, which having gotten, there was no Entrance again to be expected. King *Pepin* being acquainted with their Purpose, prepared all his Men of War ready to relieve *Valentine*, if Necessity required. Having all Things in Readiness, the Hour was at Hand that the Justs should begin. So each of them being prepared for the Encounter, they valiantly couched their Spears, and the first Course proved so valiant, that their Spears shivered all in Splinters; each Combatant perceiving Valour to brandish on the Top of his Helmit, made out a second Course, wherein *Valentine* got the better; for with his Spear, charg'd against the Admiral, he gave him such a Blow, that he forced his Spear quite thro' his Body, informing that he fell from his Horse stone dead, making a pitiful Noise at his Departure; wherefore the Pagans ran at *Valentine* and would have killed him. *Valentine* perceiving their Intent, with a resolute Courage, put Spurs to his Horse, and with his Sword drawn, violently rushed thro' the thickest of the Pagans, and slew many of them as he passed. King *Pepin*, with his Host, came up to the Aid of *Valentine*, but he was so beset by the Pagans, that he was smitten from off his Horse; which *Valentine* spying, came up to rescue the King, so that he horsed him again. The King perceiving himself delivered out of Danger, he called unto *Valentine*, and said, My Child, thou hast saved my Life, which if the Gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this Time the Battle grew so hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City: when they came to the Gates, the Christians that were in the City issued on them, and placed the Ensigns and Standards of King *Pepin* on the Walls.

The Pagans seeing King *Pepin's* Colours displayed on the Walls, betook themselves to Flight; in Chace

Chace of them the Christians followed on so fast, that they shamefully ended their Days. In this Battle were slain a thousand Pagans, only by the Means of *Valentine*, who bore himself so valiantly all that Day, that he was the Death of many of the Pagans.

And thus, by his Prowess, the City was again restored to the Christians, for which Deed there was great Triumph in all Christendom, but especially at *Rome*, that all the Inhabitants round about gave everlasting Praise to King *Pepin* of *France*, and by the general Applause of the People, he was created Emperor, and crowned by the Pope. King *Pepin* did many good Acts in his Time, administering Justice to all. This happened in the Time of Pope *Clement* the IVth.

C H A P. VIII.

How Haufray and Henry repined at the Love the King shewed to Valentine.

KING *Pepin*, having expelled the Pagans out of *Rome*, took his Way back again towards *Orleans*, and being there arrived, he was made right joyfully welcome by *Bertha* his Queen, with her little Son *Charlemain*, and her fair Daughter *Eglantine*, and her Joy appeared so much the more for that *Valentine*, whom she loved so dearly, was returned Home in Safety. Being some few Days rested from his weary Labours, the Lady sent for *Valentine*, who accordingly came unto her. When she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an amorous Countenance, began thus unto him: *Valentine, you above all the Rest are most welcome; and well ought it so to be: Fame hath blown forth her Trumpet of your Triumphs; and Report says, You were the Champion that drove the Pagans out of Rome.* *Valentine* replied, *Madam, I can hinder no Man to speak what pleaseth him; but as for myself, I have done little deserving Praise; but it hath pleased the King your Father, to do me great Honour, even so much as all the Days of my Life I am not able to make the least Recompence.* And as he spake these Words, *Haufray* and *Henry* (two Men composed of all Envy) entered the Chamber of *Eglantine*; and seeing him, began thus to speak; *Valentine!* what have you to do in the Chamber of our Sister? It is no Place for such Stragglers as you are; this your Boldness is not to be borne; no Man knows of whom you are, therefore we advise you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again, lest you dearly pay for your Presumption. *Valentine* hearing these Words, answered; Wrong

me not, for I entered not the Chamber of your Sister to her Dishonour. What, tho' I be poor, and not known from whence I am, yet I am not so base as to offer Violence unto one descended from the Blood of Kings; and further, I promise and vow never to come into her Chamber again: And therewithal departed, leaving the Lady very penfive all alone. *Valentine* hastened to the Palace, to wait upon the King at Dinner, where was in Presence *Haufray* and *Henry*, and the Duke of *Mylon* *Douglar*, who likewise waited on the King during Dinner. Dinner being ended, the King arose, and called to *Valentine*, and in the hearing of all his Nobles, began to say; My Lords, here is *Valentine*, who hath well deserved at our Hands, and who saved my Life when I was in danger; Therefore to the End that you may take Knowledge of his good Services towards me, I freely give him the Earldom of *Clerimont* and *Avergne*; and when I can bestow more upon him, he shall not be forgotten. *Valentine* gave him many Thanks, saying, That he had heaped more Honours on him than he could any Way deserve. *Haufray* and *Henry* hearing these Words, grew greatly discontented, and at last *Henry* began to speak to his Brother in this Manner: This Foundling Fellow, I perceive, grows in Favour with the King, and there must be some Course taken to cross his Designs, or else our Overthrow will shortly fall upon it: For (quoth he) you know well, that the King has no Sons but we two, and one named *Charlemain*, which, if our Father die, may be our Furtherance quickly to be set beside the Kingdom. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this *Valentine* will support and uphold him against us: Therefore, Brother, I think it good to frame some Plot against him, to bring him in Displeasure with the King, and so far to prosecute our Revenge against him, that if it be possible, we will not only work his Downfall, but Life also. This being effected, we may at our Pleasure govern the Realm without Contradiction. He having ended his Speech, *Haufray* replied, let it be as thou hast said, and that we may entrap his Life, this shall be our Plot, We will go to the King, and tell him that the Upstart hath deflowered our Sister, and that we took him in Bed with her; which, when the King heareth, he will certainly put him to Death. Being resolved, they daily fed their Imaginations with the Death of *Valentine*; while he (not mistrusting) served the King in all Duty, in-somuch, that the King's Love daily increased to-wards

wards him, and above all others, desired most his Company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to *Orson* his Brother, who all this while lived in the Forest, so much feared of all Men, that none durst approach nigh the Wood: Daily Complaints came unto the King from every Side; and among the rest it chanced on a Day, that a poor Man came all wounded, saying thus unto the King; Sir, I am come before you to make Complaint against the wild Man in the Woods; for one Day as I and my Wife passed through the Forest, carrying Bread and other Victuals, the wild Man came upon us, and took it away; and more than that, he violently took my Wife from me, and constrained her to yield unto his lawless Lust. The King hearing out the poor Man's Tale, was disposed to make himself merry with his ill Fortune, and thereupon asked the poor Man this Question, whether grieved him most, either the taking away of his Victuals, or his Wife? By my faith (said the poor Man) the Wrong offered to my Wife. Thou hast rightly said (quoth the King) therefore I command my Treasurer to see Restitution made thee for the Loss of thy Victuals; but for thy Wife, thou must bear the Burden thereof thyself. After this the King caused all his Barons to assemble, and make some order to take *Orson*, all which they did: And hereupon a Proclamation was sent into all Parts of the Realm, That whosoever he was, that would take this wild Man, alive or Dead, should have a thousand Marks for his Reward. Hereupon assembled many worthy Knights, to take this Talk in Hand; but the King being one Day in his Palace, in the midst of his Nobles, talking and Debating who should be appointed to this Business, *Haufray*, enemy to *Valentine* being there, said unto the King, Sir, here is *Valentine*, whom you have nourished and advanced to high Dignities, and one that hath offered unlawful Love to our Sister *Eglantine*; he is the fittest to set forwards to try his Valour, and to be employed to fetch this wild Man, that is such a Terror to the Inhabitants, and if with his Valour he can vanquish him, then let him have *Eglantine* in Marriage, which is his desired Wish. The King hearing these Words of his Son, said, Away! for thy Speech savoureth of nothing but Envy: What though he be poor, and of low Birth, and found in a Forest, yet I find him to be true and trusty, and of gentle Carriage: and to me seemeth to be born of more noble Parentage than thou art: Leave off these Malicious and bitter Speeches against him,

for the Behaviour that dwelleth in him, shews that he is descended of more noble Lineage than as yet to us appeareth. And for my Part (for the divers Virtues that daily are seen in him) I am willing that he go to my Daughter whenever he pleases, for I am well assured that no dishonour can be offered out of a Branch of such a generous Spirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of *Valentine*, was sore displeased in Heart; but setting a good Face upon the Matter, dissembled his Countenance for that Time; but it seemed *Valentine* well observed him, and at last burst forth into these Words: *Haufray*, without any Cause on my Part, you have spoken ill of me, and your Will is, that I should undertake the Fight and Conquest of this wild Man only to this End, that I might end my Days, and your Revenge may be accomplished upon me: well be it so, here before the King, I take a solemn Oath, that I will take the Enterprize upon me, and find out the wild Man; and having found him, will Fight him, and either bring him Alive or Dead, or else leave my dead Carcass as a Witness in the open Field. But if I Conquer and Live, I will never more be seen in this Country till I have found my Father that begat me: As also, bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlock, and how I came to be left an Infant in the Wood. The King understanding well what Danger *Valentine* had plunged himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two Sons, cursing them, for that they were the Cause of this Enterprize; for he loved *Valentine* more than any; and at last called *Valentine* and said: 'My Child, advise well what you undertake; for to fight with the wild Man is Desperation itself; you cannot be ignorant how many valiant Men, and worthy Champions have been by him overcome, and others likewise of valiant Account have forsaken this Combat: Therefore, I say, let not the evil Words of a few malicious Men, make you desperate in losing your Life: for my Child, it is far better to endure all the bitter Words of Envy (which is accounted Virtue) than hazard your Life against such a Monster, and no Man.' *Valentine* replied, 'Pardon me, my Liege, for I will never revoke my intended Purpose. They call me Foundling Brat, which grieves my very Soul, for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what Place, but I rest determined, and so I take my Leave; for to Morrow Morning I will set forward on my intended Enterprize.' Having taken his Leave, marvel not tho' the fair *Eglantine* made great Lamentations for

what had happened; but the next Morning by break of Day, she called one of her Maidens, and said unto her, 'Go, and bid *Valentine* come and speak with me before his Departure; bid him fear no Danger of Life, for I would fain take my Leave of him.' The Damsel did as the Lady commanded, and when she came to *Valentine*, she found him mounted on Horseback, and she delivered her Message unto him. He understanding her Errand, said unto her: Damsel, I know the Love to be great between the Lady *Eglantine* and me, yet I would not wish her to desire that which might turn to her Dishonour: For Envy is of so great Power, that it never leaves them whom it once possesseth. And certain it is that *Haufray* and *Henry* (Brethren to your Lady) have at me wicked and malicious Hearts, and will pursue me even to Death, (if it be possible) wherefore, fair Damsel, bear this Answer, which you hear me tell, and bid her think no evil thereof; and further, that she hold me in Excuse that I refuse to come: And so Farewel.

CHAP. IX.

How Valentine conquered his Brother Orson in the Forest of Orleans. How Valentine (having conquered Orson, the wild Man) departed from the Forest towards Orleans, where King Pepin resided.

NOW is *Valentine* upon his Journey to the Forest, accompanied only with his Page, whither being come, he put his Helmet on his Head, and sent him back again: So he rode forth all that Day seeking the wild Man, but could not find him: The night drawing on, he alighted from his Horse, and tied him to a Tree; having so done, he refreshed his Body with such Victuals as he had; and when he had eaten, and the Day shut in, *Valentine* for fear, betook himself to the Top of a Tree, and there abode all Night. In the Morning, as soon as Day appeared, he looked round about, and at last spied his Brother *Orson* running thro' the Forest: At length, when he came to the Place where *Valentine* tied his Horse, the wild Man much wondring at the Beauty of him, began to claw him with his long Nails, thinking thereby to rouse up the Courage of the Horse, for he had never seen the like. The Horse feeling the wild Man's Nails, began to kick and fling exceedingly. *Valentine* sitting on the Top of the Tree, noted the terrible Shape of the wild Man, and began to be afraid; but calling on the Gods, he requested their Aid against this Monster. *Orson* all this while was busied in behold-

ing the Horse, and still offered him such injury with his Nails, that the Horse did nothing but kick and bite him. When *Orson* perceiving the Horse to be too hard for him, he caught fast hold on him, and thought to have overthrown him. *Valentine* perceiving his Horse in Danger to be slain, cried out aloud, and said: Wild Man, leave the Horse, and stay only till I come down, and with me thou shalt have fighting enough. The wild Man, hearing a strange Voice, looked into the Tree, and there spying a Man, made unto him divers Signs with Hands and Head to come down and he would pull him in Pieces. *Valentine* making all the Haste he could, drew his Sword and leaped upon the Ground, close by the wild Man. When *Orson* saw the Sword, and that he offered to smite him therewith, he leaped back, and kept himself from the Stroke, but suddenly returned again upon *Valentine*, and threw him to the Ground: Herewithal *Valentine* was very much discomfited, for he expected no other than present Death in the Place, for he felt the strength of the wild man so great, that he had no Hopes of escaping. Being thus both grovelling on the Ground, *Valentine* assayed divers Times to have gotten *Orson* under him, but could not: When he saw that by strength there was no Hopes to overcome him, he drew out a sharp-pointed Knife, and smote *Orson* deep into one of his Sides, that the Blood issued out abundantly: *Orson* feeling himself wounded, all enraged, he gave such a Screech, that the Woods echoed at the Sound thereof; but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted *Valentine* with his sharp Nails, and got him at such an Advantage, that he threw him once more upon the Earth, where lying, they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last *Orson* took the Shield from about the Neck of *Valentine*, and beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers Colours therein emblazed: When he had looked his Fill, he cast it on the Ground, and suddenly returned again to *Valentine*, and with the Violence of his Nails and Teeth, broke in Pieces both the ribs of his Armour, and his Habergeon, in all Places where he laid hold. *Valentine* seeing himself sore wounded, after some Orisons used to the Gods, he made again upon *Orson* with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him; but *Orson* recoiling back, stepped to a Tree hard by, which he pulled up, and made thereof a Club; being thus prepared, he made against *Valentine*, and striking at him, gave him such a Blow, that he made him fall upon

upon one Knee. *Valentine* recovering again, laid about him fiercely; so there began another dangerous Fight between the two Brothers, not knowing they were so, nor the Cause of this their Fortunes. *Orson* was so cruel and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed *Valentine*, had it not been for his Sword, for he was sore afraid thereof, by reason he had received a Wound before by a Knife. Long time they fought together, insomuch as they both grew faint; in which tired Manner, both standing gaping on each other, *Valentine* looked wishfully upon *Orson*, and said thus: 'Wild Man, wherefore dost thou not yield thyself unto me? Here thou livest like a Beast, having no knowledge of human Society; come thy way with me, and I shall make thee know thyself and others; I will give thee Food of all Sorts, and also cloath thee in Apparel fitting human Shape.' *Orson* understanding by Signs he was for his Good, fell down upon his Knees, and stretched forth his Hands towards his Brother, making Signs unto him to forgive him, and he would commit himself under his Command, and with further Signs, promised, that during Life he would assist him both in Body and Goods. Matters happening thus, it was great Joy to *Valentine* in that he had conquered the wild Man, which so many Knights durst not meddle with; for by this only he had won himself more Honour than any Knight that lived in *France*. All this hard Adventure now knitting up in this Manner, he took *Orson* by the Hand, and shewed him by Signs, that he should go on before him till they were out of the Wood, for he would not trust him behind; and being out of the Wood, *Valentine* took off one of his Girths and bound both his Hands fast unto his Body, that he should not again attempt to do him any Hurt: And in this Manner being bound, he mounted on Horseback, and led the wild Man with him like a Beast, who never resisted, which was a Thing most of all to be wondered at.

Valentine took his Way towards *Orleans*: but you must imagine he could not reach it in one Day, wherefore he determined to lodge at the next Town or Village; being come thither, he thought there to take Rest that Night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the wild Man, every one ran into their Houses, shutting the Doors, and for fear durst not offer to look out on him. *Valentine* perceiving them full of Fear, cried out unto them, saying: 'Open your Doors, every Man, and fear not, for we come only for Lodging:' For all this, they

would not give him Succour. At last, seeing neither Entreaties nor Threatnings would prevail, he swore most bitterly, that if they would not receive them into their Houses to rest there that Night, he would let loose the wild Man among them. Still he proceeded to entreat for Lodging, but none would give it him: At last, as he had threatened, so he did, and letting loose the wild Man, he made him Signs how he should run against such a Gate, which was an Inn, the which he did, and wringing a Post out of the Earth, he therewithal flung it open with such Violence, that it fell off the Hooks upon the Ground. *Valentine* seeing the Gate opened in this Manner, entered the House, and the wild Man with him; But when they within saw the Gate broke down, they all forsook the House, and ran out of the Back-Door, leaving all to *Valentine* and his beastly Guest. *Valentine* perceiving them all fled, went to the Stable, and set up his Horse and dressed him; and *Orson* in the mean Time went into the Kitchen, where there were Capons and divers other Provisions of Flesh, upon a Spit, roasting at the Fire. *Valentine* made Signs to *Orson*, that he should turn the Spit; but as soon as *Orson* understood his Meaning, he set his horny Talons upon the Meat, and tore it from the Spit, devouring it as greedy as a ravenous Wolf: When he had tore the Meat in Pieces, he spied a Cauldron of Water standing by, into which he put his Head, like a Horse, and drank Water unmeasurably. *Valentine* perceiving him to be thirsty, made Signs unto him, that he should forsake the Water, and he would give him a Pot full of Wine; he gave it unto *Orson*, who set it unto his Mouth, and tasting the Liqueur, and finding it Good, drank so freely thereof that he drank out all the Wine, and afterward threw the Pot against the Ground, making a Sign unto *Valentine* to draw him more: *Valentine* fulfilled his Signs and filled him the Pot again, but *Orson* spying before him a little Bowl-Dish, he put the Wine into it, and carried it into the Stable to *Valentine's* Horse; but *Valentine* perceiving that, made Signs unto him, that his Horse drank nothing but Water; yet *Orson* shewed again by Signs, that Wine was much better than Water. Many other Accidents happened while they were in the House, which here we pass over, for the Night was so far spent, that rest was fitter for them than Meat. *Valentine* hastened him to Supper, making *Orson* bear him Company, (after his Kind) but *Orson* drank so freely of the Wine that *Valentine* gave him,

him, that he became drunk, and in the End, got him to the Fire, and fell fast asleep. *Valentine* seeing what had happened, said: Now do I perceive that there is neither Strength nor Resistance in the wild Man, for if I would I could suddenly end his Days. But in regard he would make further Trial of him, pushed against him with his Feet, so hard, that it awakened him. Being awaked, he made Signs unto him, that there were People within the Chimney; he immediately ran against the Gate of the House, so that he made all shake; at which sudden Action *Valentine* fell into great Laughter; which *Orson* perceiving, let all alone, and betook himself to his Rest again. *Valentine* made unto him another Sign, that he should fear nothing, for he would be his Watchman; but *Orson* would not sleep but with his Log in his Arms. And *Valentine* did as before he had promised unto *Orson*, and watched all that Night, fearing the Inhabitants, lest they should grow into an Uproar, for they were so greatly possessed with Fear, that they forsook their Houses, and ran every one to the Church, and all that Night so tumbled the Bells backwards, that e'er the Morning came, all the Village was filled with warlike Men. Now the Morning being come, *Valentine* betook him to his Horse, leading *Orson* bound (as he did the Day before) towards *Orleans*, and the next Day came to the City: The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the wild Man, ran every one into their Houses, shutting their Doors, and getting into their higher Rooms, gazing out of their Windows. Being entered the City, Tidings came to King *Pepin* that *Valentine* had conquered the wild Man. The King hearing thereof, was greatly astonished, and at last said; '*Valentine*, my Child, in an happy hour wast thou born, blessed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the Wood; for now I see that thou art fortunate, and by thee we are delivered of our Fears.' *Valentine* rode thro' the City of *Orleans*, till he came to the Palace Gate, of the King; and when the Porters saw *Orson*, they shut the Gates upon them, till *Valentine*, with a loud Voice, said: 'Fear not, but go and tell the King I will shield him, and all the Court from the Fury of this wild Man; for I have him so tame, that he will not hurt any one.' The Porters went and told the King what *Valentine* said, who commanded they should enter the Palace. Then *Valentine* took *Orson* by the Hand and led him into the Court. When *Bertha* and the fair *Eglantine*

heard that the wild Man was come, they got them to their Chambers for fear. *Valentine* went up to the great Hall where the King sat accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him. Among the rest, he found *Haufray* and *Henry*, who also made great shew of Love, but in their Heart wished the wild Man had been his Death.

King *Pepin* and the rest of the Lords gazed on the wild Man, insomuch that the King said, He is made of a proper Mould, fair Stature, and though he now seems rough, yet if he were cloathed, he would become the shape of a right worthy Knight. Then *Valentine* said, my Liege, it were requisite he were Baptized. It pleaseth me well, said the King, let it be done. So the Priest was appointed to Baptize him. These were his Godfathers, King *Pepin* and the Duke of *Milain*, *Valentine*, and the Dutchess of *Bourbon*: So they called his Name *Orson*. The Baptism being Solemnized, the King sat him down to Dinner, and *Valentine* waited on his Cup. Then *Orson* was commanded into the Hall to see his Behaviour; and being come, the King beheld him earnestly. *Orson* seeing the Meat, took as much as he could grasp in his Hand, and devoured it; having hated that, he spied one of the Attendants who brought a Peacock to the Table, who coming near unto him he snatched it, and sat down and devoured it. *Valentine* seeing his Behaviour, made Signs to him that he did not well, whereat *Orson* seemed ashamed; but the King bad him let him alone, for he much delighted in his Rudeness. *Orson* having devoured much Meat, got a Pot of Wine, and Drank it off, throwing the Pot on the Ground. Night being come, *Orson* was appointed to a fair Chamber and Bed; but as soon as ever he entered, he laid himself on the Ground, and so fell fast asleep.

CHAP. X.

How Haufray and Henry took Counsel together, to Murder Valentine in the Chamber of Eglantine. How Duke Savary sent unto King Pepin for Aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his Will.

RIGHT glad and joyful was the fair Lady *Eglantine*; that *Valentine* had conquered the wild Man; insomuch, that she sent him Word to bring the wild Man into her Presence. Then *Valentine* took *Orson* by the Hand, and led him to *Eglantine*, where were assembled divers Ladies of Honour to behold him. *Orson* being in the Chamber

ber in a laughing Humour, leapt upon the Bed, and made divers Signs unto the Ladies, which pleased them; but his meaning they could not understand, at which they were very sorry. At last *Valentine* opened to them his Meaning, which was, that he would gladly kiss and play with some of them, whereat they looked upon one another, and laughed. While this Assembly of Ladies were in the Chamber of *Eglantine*, *Haufray* came to *Henry*, and said thus unto him: Brother, you see how the Honour and Credit of this Foundling increaseth, which much eclipseth ours, and we must seek some Remedy for it. It is true (said *Henry*) wherefore let us lay some Plot to cut him off. Then (said *Haufray*) hearken to what I say, *Valentine* is now with our Sitter, and we may have fit Occasion to kill him in her Chamber; when we have done we will inform the King that we found him in her Bed. According to their Determination, they put in Action, and rushed into the Chamber of *Eglantine*. As soon as *Haufray* was entered, he roughly thus began with *Valentine*; 'Disloyal Man, now shalt thou know the Price of thy Inconstancy, purchasing daily Dishonour unto the King our Father, by abusing our Sister, and leading her Affections to work your Pleasure on her; insomuch that by thee she is unfortunate: But the King hath been told thereof, and he regarded not our Complaint, it is therefore Time to take Vengeance of thee in our own Persons.' And *Haufray* lift up his Fist, calling him Traitor, smote *Valentine* on the Face, so that the Blood ran out of his Mouth: *Henry* on the other side, came to him, and with a Glave thought to have smitten *Valentine* to the Earth; but *Orson* perceiving they were in Earnest, leapt out and gave *Haufray* such a Stroke with his rough Hand, that he felled him, and afterwards ran to *Henry*, and girded him so between his Arms, that if the Ladies had not been present to have appeased his Wrath, he had destroyed them both. This caused an Outcry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons of the Court, to know the Cause of this sudden Clamour; but when they understood that *Orson* had dealt so violently with the King's Sons they would have killed him with their Swords. *Valentine* perceiving their Fury drew his Sword, and Swore that if any of them offered any Violence to *Orson*, he would run them thro': this said, he made a Sign to him to be still, and so he rested him for that Time. *Haufray* and *Henry* went to their Father, making unto him great Complaint

against *Valentine* and the wild Man, saying, Father, in an evil Hour was this *Valentine* born, for he hath brought thither a wild Man, only to work our Overthrow; and if you put him not to Death, he will shortly do the like upon your Royal Person. The King hearing this Complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this Answer: That as for *Orson*, he would have put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without Leave given him; and as for *Valentine*, the King sent for him to demand the Cause of this Disorder. *Valentine* being come before the King, began to say in this Manner: 'Dread Sovereign, I was in the Chamber of your Daughter *Eglantine*, accompanied with divers other Ladies that desired to see *Orson*: I know not how, nor why, your two Sons violently entered, charging me that I had abused the body of your fair Daughter: Moreover, in the Heat of their Violence used against me, *Haufray* smote me on the Face, that the Blood issued, and *Henry* lifting up his Sword thought to have taken away my Life. All which, when *Orson* saw, he suddenly made towards them, and smote them both to the Earth, and therewithal began this Uproar.' The King hearing this Tale said, And is this true that you have said? Upon my Life (said *Valentine*) all that I have spoke is true: Then said the King, *Orson* hath done nothing but right, and that which in Duty he ought to do; And as for you *Haufray* and *Henry*, I see right well, that you are even swollen with Malice against *Valentine*, wherefore I charge you to attempt no Ill against him; for here I Vow, that I would not lose him for the best Baron in my Land, for I have made many Trials of his Love and Faithfulness towards me. And with this Answer, *Haufray* and *Henry* departed, although sorrowful in Heart that they could not work their Will upon him.

They being gone, *Valentine* stayed still in the King's Hall amongst the other Nobles that were there assembled, and *Orson* went here and there round about the Palace; and at last he came into the Kitchen, where the Cook was making ready Supper, and being there, he spied two Capons ready for the Fire. *Orson* made towards the Capons, and set upon them, eating them up raw like a hungry Dog. The Cook seeing him eat up his Capons, took a Pestle lying by him, and gave *Orson* such a Blow that he made him bow therewith: *Orson* feeling the Blow, stooped down, and took the Cook up between the Legs, throwing him down upon the Ground,

Ground, and being down he so belaboured the poor Cook, that he had nigh beaten him to Death. Tidings were brought unto the King, that *Orson* had slain the Cook, and none durst come near him. The King hearing thereof, willed him to be brought before him, and made Signs unto him that he should be hanged: but *Orson* fetched the Pestle, and made Signs how the Cook had beaten him therewith; therefore the King commanded afterwards that none should offer him any Injury. After that *Valentine* taught him Manners, how he should behave himself, and so they both lived quietly together in the Court of King *Pepin*.

It chanced not long after the coming of *Valentine* and *Orson* into the Court, that Duke *Savary* sent Messengers unto King *Pepin*, who said unto him: 'Great King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you to request your Aid against a false and accursed Pagan, (called the *Green Knight*) who hath besieged his Confinés, and intends to have his Daughter by force of Arms, notwithstanding all the Resistance that he and his three Sons can make against him.' The King having heard their Message, made this Answer, We agree to give him all the Aid we can. He had no sooner given Answer unto the Messengers, but there was come unto the Court another Messenger from *Lyons*, who after his Duty done unto the King said thus: Renowned King, assemble your Men of War in Readiness, and conduct them towards *Lyons*, for the *Almains* are coming against you in great Numbers; their whole forces consisting of a hundred thousand fighting Men. The King hearing of this sudden News, was troubled in Mind, and presently called the Bishop of *Rheims*, Duke of *Millain Douglar*, *Geras*, and *Sampson*; these with others of his Nobles being Assembled he declared what the Messenger had said, and withal craved their Counsel, what was best to be done, whether to go to *Aquitain* to succour Duke *Savary*, or to *Lyons* to resist the *Almains*; whereunto *Millain Douglar* made this Answer; the Duke, I confess, deserves to be succoured, but in two Extremes let us chuse the least; therefore I judge it most meet, first to defend our own Land, that is now in present Danger, and for the Duke he must be content to take our present Affairs for Answer. So it was concluded to go for *Lyons*. With these Words, the Messenger that came from Duke *Savary* departed, and carried these Tidings with him to *Aquitain*, which made him sorrowful to hear, because the *Green Knight* had so strongly

assailed him. Now, gentle Reader, to let you understand, for the better ordering your Proceedings, that this *Green Knight* was Brother to *Ferragus* the Giant, that kept the Lady *Bellissant* in his Castle, who was the distressed Mother of these two Infants born in the Wood, called *Valentine* and *Orson*, as it is before declared; Duke *Savary* perceiving no hope of Aid from King *Pepin*, made open Proclamation through all his Dominions, that all should be Armed against the Morrow after, for he would then go out unto the *Green Knight*, and fight with him in the Field, all which was accordingly performed. The Day appointed being come, both Armies met, as well Horse as Foot: The Pagans presented themselves in Multitudes, and the *Green Knight* behaved himself so valiantly, that at the first Encounter, with his Battle-Axe, at two Blows he slew two valiant Knights. Duke *Savary* perceiving him to be so valiant a General came up to encounter him, and meeting they assailed each other. But the Duke was ill Advised, to venture his Body against the *Green Knight*, because it was peremptorily reported of him, that he should never be overcome by any except the Son of a King, and such a one as had never sucked the Breasts of any Woman. But the *Green Knight* was herein deceived, for he thought it impossible any such Man should be upon the Earth: But it fell out contrary to his Expectation, as you shall understand. Let us now return to the two valiant Leaders who fought long and fiercely; but the Duke ventured so far into the enemy's Hands, that when he thought to have retired, he could not, for he was begirt round with such Multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken Prisoner, and brought back unto the *Green Knight*, whose Ransom would not be granted for any Gold or Treasure. His Men of Arms perceiving the Duke surprized, returned into *Aquitain*, sore lamenting the Loss of their good Duke. And his three Sons, *Garian* the eldest, *Anselma*, and *Garian* the youngest, made great Moan for the hard Hap of their Father.

The Sons having shewed their Sorrows, in comes *Fezon* his Daughter, with this lamenting Outcry: 'Alas! in an ill Hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered Death in my Quarrel, and yet there is one Thing troubleth my soul more than all the rest, which is this, that my Father should be held Captive in the Hands of his Enemies, the only way to bring his aged Years with sorrow to the Grave. Alas! dear Father,

Father, your Love to me is the only Cause of all these disastrous Chances. Thus fell *Fezon* into a dangerous Fit of Discontent, infomuch that she was almost overcome. Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with Sorrow, the *Green Knight* triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavillion, and there he began to revile him in this Manner: 'Duke, now thou perceivest that thou art my Vassal, and that I have Power over thy Life, either give me thy Daughter, *Fezon* to Wife, and redeem thy Life, or else I will have her against thy Will, and royally crown her Queen of those craggy Mansions.' The Duke hearing these proud Words, replied, 'Proud and insolent *Sarazen*, I will never consent that you have my Daughter, except you agree to be Baptized.' The *Green Knight* hearing him say so, replied, 'I am wholly bound to Mahomet, wherefore except you yield to my Demand, I will first make thee finish thy Days miserably, and after that will put to the Sword all that come in my Way, Men, Women, and Children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus so resolute, began again in this Manner; 'Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy Cruelty, for I had rather rely on their Power than thine.' The *Green Knight* hearing him say so, began thus to reply: 'Grave Duke, leave off thy sad Laments, and hearken unto me, and thus it is that thy Daughter's Beauty hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recall my threatned Sentence of Death against thee; out of which captive Affections towards thy Daughter, I am forced to yield to these Conditions, That thou shalt find a Knight within the Space of six Months, to encounter me, and if it so happen, that by Strength of Arms he conquers me, I vow, by all the Heavens, to send thee back into thy own Country, without wasting any of the same: But if it happen that I conquer that Knight, then shalt thou willingly resign thy fair Daughter into my Hands, to be my lawful Wife.' These Articles being produced, the Truce was accordingly proclaimed. His Counsellors hearing what had past, advised him to send Messengers into all Lands, with these Advertisements following: If there were any Knight whatsoever, that durst encounter the *Green Knight* for Love of the beautiful Lady *Fezon*, he should lay down his Gage and so be answered. These Letters were sent into twelve Christian Lands; what followed you may better learn by the succeeding Chapter,

CHAP. XI.

How divers Knights assembled at Aquitain, at a solemn Just there holden, to bear away the Love of the beautiful Lady Fezon. How Haufray and Henry, accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away the Life of Valentine.

DURING this time of the Truce between Duke *Savary* and the *Green Knight*, King *Pepin* had taken his Journey against his Enemies at *Lyons*, accompanied with a mighty Host; being come before the City with his Forces he set upon King *Lampatris*, who had also brought into the Field a hundred thousand Men: *Lampatris* was King of *Siris*, *Holland* and *Friezland*, with the Country of *Mone-march*, in which stood a very strong City, whereunto they withdrew themselves. King *Pepin* getting Knowledge hereof, strongly besieged it, infomuch that at last they were constrained to yield or suffer Famishment; but resolving upon the safety of their Lives, they yielded the City, which the King bestowed upon *Guy Marshal of France*. This War being ended, King *Pepin* returned into *France*, with all his warlike Soldiers. Being arrived at *Paris*, it was told him, Duke *Savary* had made a Truce with the *Green Knight*, and the Manner how, whereat the King laughing, said in the Presence of his Barons, whoever he is among you that would win fair *Fezon* for his Love, must take upon him a Combat against the *Green Knight*, whom, if he conquer and overcome, the Duke will not only give him his Daughter, but half his Possessions, and that this is true, behold Letters written with his own Hand. Every one of these worthy Knights viewed these Letters, yet none of them durst undertake the Enterprize, save only *Valentine*, who perceiving them all refuse it, said thus unto the King: 'Dread Sovereign, if it please you to give me Leave, I will adventure my Strength upon the *Green Knight*, and will gladly undertake the Task? Again I have a great Desire to leave *France*, for I long to take in hand some tedious Journey, to find out from whence I am descended. *Valentine* (said the King) take thou no Care whence thou art, for it is in my Power to make thee greater than any Man within my Court: But since thou art willing to go to *Aquitain*, I freely give thee Leave, but on Condition, that after thou hast tried thy Manhood with the *Green Knight*, thou shalt return if thou escape with Life. *Valentine* yielded to the

the King's Demand, and so taking Leave, he shortly after prepared for his Journey. When *Eglantine* heard that he would go to *Aquitain*, she was sorrowful, and at last, in the midst of Tears, sent for *Valentine* to come to her. *Valentine* promised the Messenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed; and so took his Leave of her.

Valentine and *Orson* having taken their Leave of King *Pepin*, addressed themselves for *Aquitain*. Being on their Way *Haufray* and *Henry* consulted together, joining to their Aid a third who was Cousin to them, how they might lie in Ambush, to set upon *Valentine* and *Orson*, to work their Destruction, which Number was about thirty able Men. This Plot being laid, Charge was given to these warlike Men, that if they could not put *Valentine* and his Brother *Orson* to Death, yet they should lay hold on *Valentine*, and keep him safe.

The Place appointed where this should be done, was a very large and great Forest thro' which they must needs pass. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, *Valentine* came riding along, with *Orson* running by his Side, swifter than any Horse, who coming near the Place where these Men lay, forth steps their Captain, called *Grygar*, accompanied with his Troop, with their Weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized *Valentine* on the sudden, and to have put him to Death. Now this fierce Traitor lent him such a mortal Blow, that the Sword pierced thro' his Armour, and entered into the Flesh, insomuch, as the Blood followed the Blow, and withal uttered forth these unwelcome Words, '*Valentine*, either yield thyself Captive, or receive thy Death.' *Valentine*, as a Man all amazed, was somewhat moved at the Sight of his Blood, and considering how he was encompassed with a



Multitude of his Enemies, recommending his Innocency to the Gods, at last he spoke in this Manner; 'My Lords, (speaking to *Henry* and *Haufray*) I see well that you have determined my Days by Treason, and without any Cause on my Part given; but yet I assure you, that before I yield myself into your Hands, or before Sun be set, I shall send

some of you here present into such a Country, that you will scarcely ever return again to bring Tidings of your Valour.' And therewith drew his Sword, and gave the first that encountered him such a Blow on the Head, that he clave him to the Teeth, and there he died. After that he betook him to the rest with such Violence that at every Stroke one fell

tell before him. *Orson* perceiving his Brother thus to lay about him, began to rouse himself, and with his rough Hands and piercing Talons, rent and tore all that came in his Way, and so bit them with his Teeth, that they fell groveling to the Ground, one upon another, where he trampled over them like Dirt, punching them with his Feet. *Valentine* seeing *Orson* thus bestir himself, held up his bloody Sword, defending himself and offending his Enemies so valiantly that they all forlook them, and durst not stay within their Sight. *Grygar*, their Captain, perceiving most of his Men killed, and overcome, cry'd thus with a loud Voice; '*Valentine*, yet I wish thee yield, or else look for nothing but Death.' *Valentine* hearing his insulting Words, made towards *Grygar*, and in a furious Manner assailed him, but being too forward, plunged himself into the Throng, that he was inclosed round about, keeping *Orson* off with their long Spears. Being thus begirt with Enemies, he still behaved himself so valiantly, that none durst lay Hands upon him, till at last they gathered in so upon him, that he was overcome with Multitudes, and being not able any longer to wield his Sword, they took him and carried him away. *Orson* perceiving that his Brother was thus posted away, run after, making a hideous Noise, but could not overtake them, for they rode faster than he could run; and losing Sight of them, knew not which Way was best to take. *Grygar* commanded them to follow *Orson*, and to bring him back alive or dead; but in vain they followed, for he out-run them, and so escaped. Those that had the Charge of *Valentine*, brought him to a Castle standing in the Midst of a Forest, kept by a notable Thief, who was Cousin-german to *Grygar*. *Valentine* being entered the Castle, they treated him cruelly, and put him in a deep Dungeon, which grieved him to the Heart, inso-much that he burst out into these Speeches: 'Alas! now is that come upon me which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the Hands of my only Enemies, and those that ever fought my Life. Farewel, noble King *Pepin*, for I fear I shall never see thee more, and that which most grieveth me, is, that you never shall understand the Truth of my Death; for the Stench of this Dungeon doth even stop my Breath. Farewel, *Orson*, thou hast already suffered Death for my Sake; and more could no Man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my natural Brother. Farewel, my dear Mother, whom I ever laboured to see, but my Hopes are frustrated, for I

now must die without the Knowledge of what Parentage I am descended.' Thus he lamented, while his Enemies determine what should be done to him: Some were of Opinion to put him to Death; others, that he should be committed to a perpetual Imprisonment. But *Grygar* being Lord over the rest, he would not yield he should be put to Death, but rather to keep him in Prison, till *Hausfray* and *Henry* had got Knowledge of all their Proceedings. Having thus set their Resolution, they determined to take their Journey towards *Paris*, where the King then lay, to meet *Hausfray* and *Henry*, who entertained them royally, being right glad that *Valentine* was fallen into their Hands. Now understand, that *Orson* all that Night was fain to rest within the Wood, lying down at the Root of a Tree; the Morning being come, he took his Way towards *Paris*, never resting until he came into the Presence of King *Pepin*. Being come thither, by Signs and Tokens he shewed the Manner of the taking of *Valentine*; but yet for all the Haste he made, *Grygar* arrived at Court before him. *Hausfray* and *Henry* were much grieved that *Orson* had escaped; but all their Comfort was, he could not speak, thinking thereby to escape Mistrust and Suspicion, but their Hopes were all frustrated, as hereafter will appear.

The next Day, the two Brethren had appointed, that *Grygar* should return in Haste to the Castle, to put *Valentine* to Death, thereby thinking all their Treason might pass undiscovered. But see how it came about, that all their Counsels were quite overthrown: for *Orson* came unto the King's Palace that Morning, and growing towards Dinner-time, the Tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons and Knights, came in, and every Man took his Place. The King being sat, and casting his Eyes about, suddenly spy'd *Orson*, whom, when he beheld, he thought that *Valentine* was not far off, but it fell out contrary. *Orson* ran thro' the Hall, making a lamentable Noise, and knocking his Breast in a most fearful Manner, which drove the King into a thousand Fears, also all the rest who beheld this lamentable Spectacle. *Orson* ran along by the Table, looking very fiercely upon every Man, and making many Signs. Among the rest, at last he lighted on the Traitor *Grygar*, who spying *Orson*, hung his Head in his Bosom. *Orson* having got Sight of him, ran to him, and gave him such a Stroke, that he smote off one of his Ears; after which he began to lay

upon his Face, infomuch, that he put out one of his Eyes, and broke three of his Teeth. *Grygar* being wounded, began to cry out for Help; but *Orson* hearing him make such an Uproar, ran again to him, and gave him such another Stroke, that he felled him to the Earth, overthrowing Tables, Meat, and all that stood before him; and had he not been rescued by a valiant Prince, that then sat at Board, he had never gone from that Place alive. The Prince having rescued him, began to say unto the King in this Manner:

'Mighty King, consider into what Danger this Man has fallen by the Fury of this wild Man: and either let him die for this presumptuous Fact, or no Man will be able to come into your Court.' The King hearing him say so, replied: 'We will consider the Cause, and as we find it, so we will proceed against him: Bring him before us, that we may consider the Cause of the Fact.' *Orson* was, upon these Words, brought before the King, and he demanded how he durst presume so far in the Presence of his Majesty? *Orson*, by Signs, said, he had slain *Valentine* in the Forest, and that he would be revenged for his Death, on that inhuman Traitor *Grygar*, and withal closed his Fist, and put it to his Mouth in great Rage, and in Token of Defiance. King *Pepin* perceiving by his Actions, the Cause of the Matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barons in this Manner: 'My Lords, you see as well as I, that this wild Man hath challenged *Grygar* to fight with him; therefore tell me your Opinion, what is best to be done in this Case; for I cannot chuse but marvel, why this wild Man should find out *Grygar* above all the Knights here assembled: Therefore let every Man freely speak, for I much doubt, but some hidden Secret may lie therein; and for my Part, I could willingly consent, that it should be tried forthwith, by Combat between them.' When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barons agreed to the Verdict the King had passed. So the Battle was determined, and *Grygar* was brought to the King, to the Intent that he should undergo the Challenge against the wild Man. *Grygar* hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful and sad, and not without Cause, for he foresaw that his Treason would come to Light; and therewithal cast an ill-favoured Eye on *Haufray*. *Henry* perceiving *Grygar* to stand so amazed, said, 'Fear not, for I promise thee, however it may fall out, that no Danger shall come to thee from our Father

the King, for we will work thy Peace, so thou wilt swear never to reveal the Fact. Yea, (quoth he) I well perceive how the Case will be with me, I must suffer a reproachful Death for your Sakes. Having thus said, he left *Henry* and returned to the King, saying, 'Mighty King, let me make request unto your Majesty, that you will dismiss me from this dangerous Task; the Reason chiefly moving me, is, that infomuch as it is not Man against Man, whereby a Knight might win Honour, but a wild Savage to encounter with Man, and no Knight, I think I may safely (so your Majesty be pleased) refuse the Combat.' Nay, (quoth the King) no Excuse in this Case can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not only by my Advice, but also by the Counsel of all my Barons; and the Reason moving us to grant it, was, that Treason long lying hid might come to Light. *Grygar* hearing it thus concluded on, grew more into Despair; but *Haufray* being there, comforted him again in this Manner; 'Doubt not, for you have Equity on your Part; and besides, I will see you well armed in all Points, fitting your knightly Race.' When *Orson* gathered by Signs, that he was to fight with this Traitor, he was right glad; and withal made Signs unto the King that *Valentine* was dead; whereat the King grew wondrous sad. And fain would *Orson* have been at the Back of *Grygar*, but the King commanded him to be taken away, making Signs to him, that he should strike no more till the Time they could meet for the Trial of the Truth. Again the King called unto *Grygar*, to make Haste and arm himself; *Grygar*, loth to venture his Life upon so uncertain Ground, began once more to speak unto the King, saying, 'Most Dread Sovereign, I have been long Servitor about your Person, both in War and Peace; but you reward me not accordingly, infomuch as you compel me to fight against a Man that hath neither Sense, Reason, nor in Truth, human Shape.' *Grygar*, (said the King) if the Truth be on your Side you need not fear, for you shall enter into the Field well armed; and as for *Orson*, he shall adventure upon thee altogether unarmed. Again, you shall be well mounted, he on Foot; nor shall he bear any Weapons. The Right, you say, is on your Side, wherefore, maintain that Right, and shew your Valour, for the Sentence of Combat may not be recalled.'

C H A P. XII.

How Orson and Grygar fought together; and how Orson returning Victor, caused Grygar to con-

sele

feels the Treason, who was afterwards hanged, and how Valentine was delivered from the Dungeon.

THE Place of Combat being appointed, Orson attended in a Readiness for his Enemy; in the End, Grygar being well armed by Haufray and Henry, took his Leave of them in this wise; 'My Lords, in your Cause I am delivered over to Death; evil was the Day wherein I began this Enterprize.' Hold thy Peace, (said Henry) for I will defend thee from the Sentence of my Father, and work thy Safety, so thou wilt be secret. Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted, went towards the Palace Gate, where this Combat was to be effected. The Hour being come, the King repaired to the Window, all the Nobles in the Court being assembled; the Judges were appointed, that no Wrong should be offered on either Part. So Grygar being entered the Lifts, he spied Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying, 'Villain, thou hast offered me great Wrong, in putting out one of my Eyes; but e'er I part, I will make thee acknowledge that Wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me.' Orson perceiving whereunto his proud Speeches tended, shewed him his Nails, gnashing his Teeth; whereat Grygar suddenly coted his Spear and ran upon him; Orson spying the Spear bent against him, gave back, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his Mark, and ran his Spear into the Ground: Orson taking this Advantage, suddenly seized the Spear into his own Hands, and having hold thereof, gave his Enemy such a Stroke therewith, that he astonished him. Grygar feeling the Fury of his Stroke, set Spurs to his Horse, and rode like a Madman about the Field. Orson ran after him with a grinning Countenance, making Signs to the King, that he would e'er long force him to yield unto him. Grygar fearing the Danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself muttered out these Words: Ah! Haufray, for thy Cause and Sake am I thus delivered over to Death. Long and tedious was the Fight, but Grygar could never so much as wound the wild Man. At last Orson cast away his Spear, and came to Grygar in such a Manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad and furious, that he overthrew his Rider, and with the Fall he lost his Shield, which Orson spying, took up and put it on his own Back, and then came unto Grygar's Horse, and got upon him, riding round about the Field, and making ill favoured Signs and Tokens, insomuch, as all the Beholders stood as Men dismayed. Among the rest

the King himself appeared very sorrowful, and at last began thus to speak; 'My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this Fight will grow; but it is my Opinion, that there is Treason smothered, and not yet come to Light. Orson having a great While ranged about the Field on Horseback after his Enemy, at last forsook his Horse, and encountered Grygar on Foot, insomuch that he gave him such a Blow, that he smote him to the Earth; afterwards he leaped upon him and disarmed him of his Weapons, then the next Blow he struck, he smote off one of his Arms; next in the Body he gave him such a Wound, that it cut him even to the Reins of his Back. Grygar having received all these Wounds, cried out most pitifully, insomuch that every one requested that he might have a Priest to confess him of his Sins. The Guard that was appointed for the Field, hearing these Outcries, sent out a worthy Knight to demand what he would have done; unto whom Grygar said, Sir, bring me before the King's Majesty, and before him and the rest of his Assembly, I shall reveal the Treasons whereof I am guilty, from Point to Point effectually.

At last Grygar was brought before the King, who asked Pardon for his high Offence, and in Presence of all the Beholders, told him that the only Actors in this traiterous Plot, were Haufray and Henry, his two Sons, and by their Means he had taken Valentine and put him in Prison, and there meant to have put him to Death. The King having heard this Tale, and perceiving the whole Truth of this Plot, commanded Grygar to be hang'd upon the next Tree he came unto. The King having thus given Sentence against Grygar, called for his Horse, and being mounted, made all the Haste possible unto the Prison where Valentine lay. Orson perceiving the King would undertake such a Journey, addressed himself to run along by the King's Horse, to lead him the Way, making many Signs of Joy and Gladness. The King marking well all the wild Man's Behaviour, often spoke unto his Lords in this Manner: 'My Lords, it is wonderful that this wild Man should bear such an ardent Affection towards Valentine; and besides it strikes me into a thousand Imaginations.' Now you must know, that the King had great Cause even to love this wild Man, for he was his natural Nephew, tho' as yet not revealed, neither was the Time yet come to bring it to Light, till that by Clerimond, Sister to the Giant Ferragus, it should be made manifest; for that Time Clerimond had a Castle, and in it a Head of Brass, composed by Negromancy, which Head told unto Clerimond

what should happen unto her all her Life; and also all that she had done in her past Time: Besides this same was composed of such wondrous Magic Art, that it should never leave off speaking till the noblest Knight in the World should enter the Castle, and then the Head utterly to give over, and never speak more. This fell out upon *Valentine*, whom the fair Lady *Clerimond* should take to Husband, and for whom he shall endure a World of Miseries, as in the succeeding History you shall understand. So leave we this and return back again to King *Pepin*, where before we left him. King *Pepin* goeth on towards the Forest, to save the Life of *Valentine*; and *Orson* being with him, brought him unto the Castle wherein he was imprisoned. Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the King, barred the Gates, for so they were commanded by the Resident within the Castle. The King perceiving he could not enter in Peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by Force, and so they did; being got in, they seized upon all the Traitors, and bound them fast in Chains; having so done they went into the Dungeon where *Valentine* lay bound, and brought him forth unto the King, *Valentine* spying the King, fell down upon his Knees, yielding him Thanks for that extraordinary Kindness shewed him, in delivering him out of a Hell of Darkness, and Fear of Death. The Barons also that attended the King, welcomed him gladly, telling him all that had happened, and how that *Orson* had fought with the Traitor *Grygar*, in this Quarrel, and overcame him. *Valentine* hearing this, embraced *Orson*. Afterwards the King commanded that all the Traitors should be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after spoke thus unto *Valentine*: '*Valentine*, seeing it is thy good Hap, thus to be miraculously delivered out of the Hands of thine Enemies, I would have thee to abide with me.' But he replied, 'Dread Sovereign, pardon me, for I will never return again, till I have found out the Parents from whence I am descended; and so I humbly take my Leave of your Majesty.' So here we leave King *Pepin*, and treat of *Valentine* and *Orson*, who are taking their Way to *Aquitain*, to fight the *Green Knight*, a Man feared of all Men. But I must remember that which I told you before, that he should never be vanquished by any, but a King's Son that had never sucked a Woman. Being come to *Aquitain*, the People flocked from all Parts, to see the rough and unmanly Shape of *Orson*. But *Valentine* seeing their Folly, made him a

Jacket of Steel; when *Orson* got it on, he was offended thereat, and would have thrown it away, but he feared *Valentine*, and would do any Thing he commanded. *Orson* having his Jacket upon his Back, looked much upon himself, and at last became proud thereof, and set his Countenance according to his Heart. Now as they were riding on their Way, *Valentine* spied a fair 'Squire, making much Lamentation; *Valentine* beholding him well, said thus unto him: Friend, what aileth thee to shed these Tears? Have you sustained any Loss either by Man or Beast? Tell me what may be the Cause, and I promise you to the best of my Power, to relieve you. Alas! (said he) thereof I make no Doubt, but know this, the Cause of my Lamentations is the Loss of a kind and gentle Master, and a Man of the greatest Valour in Christendom. How have you lost him? (quoth *Valentine*) Sir, as I was travelling towards *Aquitain*, to fight with the *Green Knight*, thinking thereby to win the fairest Lady in the World, called *Fexon*, which Lady, it is not possible for any one to have, except he first overcome in single Combat, the *Green Knight*; divers valiant Knights have there miscarried, and when he conquered them, he caused them to be hanged on a Tree, and the Number that are already dead, are thirty-two, yielding no Shew of Mercy towards any.

Is this true (quoth *Valentine*) that thou hast told me? Why then sure he is some Devil in Man's Shape, that doth such strange Exploits; but towards *Aquitain* I am journeying to try my Fortune against him; for I have heard much of that Lady *Fexon*. Ha! Sir! (quoth the 'Squire) go not thither to lose your Life by such a Devil. 'Squire, (quoth *Valentine*) I will go forward, for I mean to cope with that famous *Green Knight*; but I will talk and advise with the Lady *Fexon*; *Orson* gathering some Understanding of their Talk, made Signs unto *Valentine*, that he might fight with the *Green Knight*, and that he would make Love to the Lady *Fexon*; whereat he laughed heartily. By this Time, think them to come near unto the City of *Aquitain*, standing upon a Hill; and meeting with an old Man, he questioned him, what City that was before him? Marry, (quoth he) it is *Aquitain*. Now tell me (quoth *Valentine*) where resteth the *Green Knight*? Why, Sir, without the City: I think you are going to fight with him. 'Ay, (said he). Ah, Sir! (said the old Man) undertake not so foul a Folly; for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither my Son, and stand thou on this little Hill, and I shall shew

shew thee above forty famous Knights hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome: Also there is now but fifteen Days to be accomplished, and the Duke of *Aquitain* must part with his fair Daughter *Fezon*, to his great Grief, and Overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father, (quoth *Valentine*) the Gods defend her. He had no sooner spoke these Words, but there came another ancient Man of fourscore Years of Age, in the Habit of a Pilgrim; this Man was *Blandiman*, 'Squire to the distressed Lady *Bellifant*, and he it was, that led his Lady *Bellifant* into the Castle of *Ferragus* the Giant, as before you have heard. *Valentine* spying him, demanded of him whence he was, and from whence he came? 'Sir, (quoth the Pilgrim) from *Constantinople*: But I could not enter into the City, by Reason a Pagan Soldier hath begirt it with a Siege; neither could I come to deliver the Message on which I am sent; wherefore I thought it my safest Course to return.' Pilgrim, (quoth *Valentine*) what thinkest thou of the *Green Knight*, is it not possible he should be overcome? No, (said the Pilgrim) I advise you not to follow the Enterprize; for if there were an hundred of you, he would see the End of you all. Father, whither go you? (said *Valentine*) 'Sir, I take my readiest Way to *Paris*, for I have a Message to King *Pepin* from a Sister of his, named *Bellifant*, that hath long been banished from *Constantinople* wrongfully; and now is the good Lady in the House of a Giant, that keepeth her and useth her honourably, intending to know King *Pepin*'s Mind, whether he consented unto these Wrongs done unto her; for he well knoweth she is a virtuous Lady, and for her Sake, offers to put himself in single Combat with the Emperor of *Greece*; for that he hath so wrongfully banished her.' Pilgrim, (quoth *Valentine*) I pray thee return back with me to *Aquitain*; for thither I am going to fight with the *Green Knight*. If the Gods give me Victory against him, I will accompany thee into *France*: for I tell thee, only for the Love I bear unto King *Pepin* I undertake this Fight; for he hath been a Means of my Preservation, and is a Father unto me: therefore unto him I dedicate all my Labours, and rest wholly at his Command. Sir, (quoth *Blandiman*) to this Motion I will never consent; for my Lady hath put me in Trust to dispatch her Affairs, and I will discharge the Duty of a trusty Servant towards her; and to taking my Leave, I commend you to the Protection of the Gods: The Pilgrim being gone, *Valentine* looked after him, and not

without Cause, but he wist not why; for this was the Man that had borne Part of his Mother's Exile. Well, *Valentine* went on his Journey, and after some Days came near to the City of *Aquitain*. *Valentine* beheld the City very earnestly, and passing on, he spied a pleasant fountain; thither he went, and alighted from his Horse, laying himself down under a Tree to refresh him, and *Orson* was his Keeper all the while. Anon he awaked, and prepared to take Horse again, but suddenly there arrived at the same Fountain, a most curious Knight, proud, and of so haughty a Stomach, that he was stiled the *Proud Knight*, and withal so fierce and resolute, that he never asked Question of any Man; yet, if he, whom he met, saluted him not, he presently killed him.

This proud Knight came to the Fountain, and *Valentine* beholding him, said never a Word, and *Orson* also gaz'd fiercely on him. The proud Knight was anger'd in his Heart, and approached near unto *Orson*, and gave him such a Blow, that the Blood issued out of his Mouth; *Orson* feeling the Blow smart, suddenly took him and threw him on the Earth, and presently spying a Knife at the Knight's Girdle, smote him therewith into the Body, so deep, that there was seen nothing but Blood. The Knight seeing himself wounded, cried out aloud, whereupon *Valentine* coming in, rescued the Knight out of *Orson*'s Hands, and said, 'Fair Knight, you have offered great Wrongs, to strike a poor wild Man in this rude Manner, who can speak never a Word.' With that the proud Knight began thus roughly to *Valentine*; 'Proud Miscreant, why then dost thou not salute me?' And therewithal drew forth a Glave, thinking to have smitten him: *Valentine* seeing the Blow, drew forth his Sword, and struck at the proud Knight with such Violence, that he struck him dead, and said unto him; 'Hereafter learn thou to salute Men in a more friendly Manner.' The proud Knight being dead, his Men fled with all the Haste they could to *Aquitain*, bearing Tidings of their Master's Death. Duke *Savary* hearing thereof, was greatly displeased; for he was his Cousin. Among the rest, *Valentine* understood that Lamentation was made for the Death of the proud Knight, beside the Fountain; whereupon he suddenly mounted, and entered the City, and lodging in a Burgher's House, whereby it came to the Ears of Duke *Savary*, that he had slain his Cousin. The Duke commanded that *Valentine*, and his Brother *Orson*, should be brought before him; and being come in-

to the Presence of the Duke, he began in this Manner: 'Friend, from whence are you? What Prince do you serve? And whether be ye a Knight or no?' Sir, (said *Valentine*) I am a Knight, and owe my Duty and Service to the famous King *Pepin* of

France. Then said the Duke unto him, You have slain my Cousin. 'Tis true, said he, and so I should have done had it been my own Kinsman, for he was of so high a Stomach, that he disdained to speak to any Man, and smote so furiously at my



Companion, that he had near killed him; which I perceiving, drew forth my Sword and slew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a Stranger in the City, and hither am I come to combat with the *Green Knight*; as also to behold that beauteous Lady *Fezon*, whom the whole World admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of Equity for Strangers to pass up and down in Safety: Consider I have shewed you the Cause of my Coming.' When the Duke heard *Valentine* say so, he said thus unto him; 'Knight, right well thou hast answered me; and seeing my Cousin hath come by this, more by Pride than Courage, I am right sorrowful, and so I pass it over, and pardon thy Deed, but in that you urge, that your coming hither was to combat with the *Green Knight*, come you into my Palace, and there you shall behold the Beauty for which you thus far adventured: Moreover, that you may see that you are not come alone, you shall behold fifteen Knights to accompany you, and but just arrived, for the Love of the

Lady *Fezon*, to try their Valour against the said *Green Knight*, their Enemy. Go, I say, unto my Palace, salute my Daughter, as my Custom is to permit Strangers, before they adventure their Persons in Battle with the *Green Knight*, and having presented yourself before her in the Sign of Love you shall receive from her a Ring of Gold. Sir, (quoth *Valentine*) I shall be ready to do all the Rites and Customs; and besides I will obey you in all Things whatsoever it shall please you to command.

This Conference ending, the Duke went into the Castle, accompanied with *Valentine* and *Orson*; having entered the Hall, where the Knights were assembled, *Valentine* beheld the Lady sitting among them; and making his Way unto her, with all Duty and Reverence, at last he saluted her thus; 'Lady, you, whose Beauty and Fame is spread thro' the World, the Gods preserve you from the *Green Knight*, whom I dare boldly avouch, is not worthy to touch thy super-excellent Lips. Moreover, dear Lady,

Lady, may it please you to understand, that *Pepin*, the mighty King of *France*, hath sent me hither, to present unto you the most noble Man that liveth on Earth; wherefore, Lady, behold him well, for he feareth no Man, nor any Weapon, altho' he cannot speak: Wherefore, I assure you, the *Green Knight* is not able to withstand his mighty Force, nor make any Resistance against him.' Sir, (quoth the Lady) I yield unto the King of *France* Thanks; as also to you that have taken such Pains to present such a one before me. But say, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better clothed? for methinks he is of an excellent Person, well formed, straight, and of a hardy Countenance, and if he was washed and bathed, his Flesh would be both white and soft. Lady, (said *Valentine*) he never wore any Garment till of late, and then I caused this Jacket to be made; moreover I assure you, that when he came first to *Paris*, he came a naked Man, and his Flesh was so hard, that he neither fear'd Wind nor Cold. While he was speaking these Words, *Fezon* beheld him very wishfully, for she was in Love with him. But *Valentine* again spoke thus; Lady, for myself I must say something also; therefore know this, that only for the Love of you I have ventured in this Climate, to see if Fortune will so much favour me, that I may bear you from all the Comers, by Force of Arms, and yet fair Lady, one Thing more I have to utter unto you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto myself, that I will never return again into *France* till I have proved my Fortune on the *Green Knight*, and with him I intend to cope before I part hence; and either deliver him into your Hands as conquered, or suffer Death, as many before me have done. 'Alas! Knight, (said the Lady) put not yourself into Danger for my Sake, for methinks it is a Folly for any Man to endanger himself for the Good of another. Again, there be many valiant Knights have miscarried in seeking my Love, and I the Unhappiest living, to see these unfortunate Days.' Lady, (quoth he) what I have vowed I mean to accomplish. Why then, fair Knight, God be thy Speed; and therewithal drew forth two Rings of Gold, giving *Valentine* the one, and *Orson* the other. Also they sat down at the Table among the other Knights, and were welcomed with great Feastings. Being sat at the Table, *Fezon* still fixed her Eyes on *Orson*, and *Orson* on her, as it were interchangeably glancing Love-looks one to another, with exceeding gracious Aspects. Now in the Midst of all these Feastings, the *Green*

Knight, as his Custom was, came thundering at the Gates, only to have a Sight of the beauteous Lady *Fezon*, for you shall understand that such were the Conditions between him and the Duke, that every Day it shall be lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady without Contradiction. Being entered the great Hall, his Manner was to cry out with a loud Voice, saying, Valiant Duke of *Aquitain*, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me, for the Love of this Lady? The Duke answered, Yea; I have yet within my Palace, sixteen valiant Knights, that mean to try their Fortunes upon thee before they depart my Country. Then, said the *Green Knight*, let me see them, and the Lady *Fezon*. Enter, said the Duke, for thou hast free Liberty. Therewithal the *Green Knight* entered the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights, one after another: At last, when he had gone thro' them all, he began to speak to them in this Manner: Lords, eat and drink, and make merry, for To-morrow shall be your last: and know that it will fall out to all your Shares to be hanged on the Top of my Tree, as many before you have been served. *Valentine* marking well his high Words, grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him: 'Proud Knight, these Vaunts might well lie smothered in thy Breast; for I tell thee, this Day is come hither a Knight, that will hold thee Tack more than any one that ever encountered thee; and whereas thou triumphantly hast conquered many, he it is shall vanquish thee, and have thy dead Corps a Prey for ravenous Beasts.' Now *Orson* understood that *Valentine* said all this of him, and also knew this to be the *Green Knight*, by whom so many valiant Men had lost their Lives; insomuch, that he saluted him with a fierce Visage, and whetting his Teeth, leapt from the Table, and taking the *Green Knight* by the Middle, threw him upon his Neck, as if he had been a little Child, and having him at Advantage, spying a Wall, threw the *Green Knight* with such Violence against the same, that all the Beholders thought he had broken his Neck, for he lay as dead; and so sat him down at the Table as before; and in a laughing Gesture, made Signs, that he would bear upon his Neck three such as the *Green Knight*. At this sudden Action of *Orson*, all the Knights there assembled, began to laugh, and coming one towards the other said, 'Now he is come indeed that shall be the Overthrow of the *Green Knight*, but we cannot chuse but lament the woful Chance that shall befall the Lady *Fezon*, for he cannot speak, and yet he

he is worthy of all Honours amongst the valiantest.' The Lady on the other Side, beholding his Valour, was instantly overcome with the Love of *Orson*, that he only conquered her Heart, and left all the rest hopeless of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this Time, the *Green Knight* was again recovered, and counting it a Deed of Courage, began thus to say; 'Lords, this wild Man hath deceived my Trust, for he came upon me unawares, without saying a Word; but I think it good to let you understand, that in the Morning I shall be better provided; and to the End I may make him an Example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibbet on Purpose, higher and stronger than for any that have been yet vanquished, and thereon I will hang his beastly Corpse for Beasts and Birds to make their Prey.'

C H A P. XIII.

How Orson encountered the Green Knight, and what followed thereon; also, how Valentine attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.

ORSON perceiving the *Green Knight* displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to chatter; and making Signs that he would meet him on the Morrow and fight with him, and in Token thereof, took his Hood and threw it on the Ground, as also his Gage; which *Valentine* seeing, spoke thus to the *Green Knight*: 'Sir, the wild Man challengeth you, and in Token thereof hath thrown down his Gage; whereof, if your Stomach serve, I advise you to take it up.' Hereat the *Green Knight* fretted so exceedingly, that he replied never a Word. Duke *Savary* being present, said to him: 'Sir, Knight, I well perceive that the Battle will go strong between the wild Man and you; and I think he will hold you tough Play: Wherefore if you chance to conquer him, you may well report of your Valour throughout the World, for he hath tried some Part of his Courage already; and vanquishing him, you need not stand in Fear of any.' The *Green Knight* hereat more enraged, swore by all the Gods, that e'er the Morrow's Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his Strength, for he should never return again from the Field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the rest: and with these Words left the Castle, and betook him to his Pavillion. Being departed, the rest of the Knights remained with the Lady *Fezon*, making great Joy, and saying one to another, that the Day was come that the *Green Knight* should meet with his Match. On

the other Side, Fame had so spread abroad the worthy Acts of *Orson* the Savage, upon the *Green Knight*, that Multitudes of People came to see and behold him, insomuch that the Duke commanded the Gates to be shut. *Orson* perceiving the People so abundantly to approach, and hearing the Noise, leapt up into a Window to behold them, for they were willing to see him, and he desirous to see them; and at Night they all departed. The People being gone, and Supper ended, they spent the rest of the Night in Merriment, and so to Bed. *Valentine* being brought to his Chamber, went to Bed, making Signs to *Orson* to lie down by him; but he not regarding his Kindness, laid him down upon the Ground according to his wonted Use, and so passed away the Night. Morning being come, *Valentine* and *Orson* went into the Hall, where they found the fair Lady *Fezon*, accompanied with the other Lords, holding a Dispute among themselves, who should fight with the *Green Knight*. At last stood up a worthy Knight of France, named *Galeram*, and said; 'Lords, so you be pleased, I am the Man who intend the first Trial.' To this they all agreed, and presently they armed him. Being armed, he came to the Lady, taking his Leave with all Joy; and she to requite his Kindness, gave him free Leave, wishing the Gods to preserve and keep him from all Danger, so that he may return as Conqueror. The Knight most humbly thanked her, and so took Horse, and hastened him towards the Tent of the *Green Knight*. The *Green Knight* perceiving from afar his Approach, set Spurs to his Horse, and encountered the famous *Galeram* so fiercely, that he smote him off his Horse to the Earth: The *Green Knight* seeing him on the Ground, suddenly lighted from his Horse, and took the Helmet from off his Head. *Galeram* expecting nothing but present Death, yielded, but all in vain, for without Pity, he first despoiled him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a Tree, as he had done the rest before. *Orson* perceiving that *Galeram* was put to Death, made Signs with his Hands, that he would fight with him presently, not letting him have any Respite; but *Valentine* answered him again by Signs, that he should withdraw himself for a while, for he would first go to try his own Strength on him: Hereupon he put himself in Armour, and took his Way towards the beauteous Lady *Fezon*, to take his Leave, as it did become him: Being come before her, she grew wondrous sorrowful; at last she spoke unto him in this Manner: 'Alas, fair Knight, what Madnes

Madness is this in you, to adventure yourself for the Love of such an unfortunate Lady as I? Well, if thou wilt needs run into Danger go on; but I will invoke the Gods to aid and assist thee, against thine and mine Enemy, and so farewell.' Leave thus taken, *Valentine* mounted, to take his way towards the *Green Knight*. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a worthy Knight, who was likewise enamoured with the Lady, who began thus to say to him: 'Sir, have a little Patience I entreat you, and suffer me to go first.' Friend (said *Valentine*) I freely grant your Desire, go, and return with Victory. This Knight's Name was *Tyris*, born in *Savoy*, a Man of great Birth and living, but riotously had run thro' his Means, leaving himself little, save only his Horse and Arms. Having thus obtained Leave of *Valentine*, he also took Leave of the Lords there assembled, and so went to the Tent of the *Green Knight*. The *Green Knight* perceiving *Tyris* to approach, leapt out of his Pavillion to welcome him. *Tyris* seeing him, said, 'Sir, presently mount and defend thyself, for I breathe out Defiance against thee.' The *Green Knight* hearing him say so, called for his Horse, which was presently brought him; and putting his Foot into the Stirrup, suddenly seated himself in the Saddle, and betook him to his Spear and Shield, preparing to take their Course at each other; but at the first encounter, the *Green Knight* ran so furiously, that he smote *Tyris* quite through the Body, so that he fell down dead; which he perceiving put a Cord about his Neck, and hanged him up among the rest.

Valentine hearing of the Death of *Tyris*, was wondrous sorrowful, yet taking Courage, he recommended himself to the Gods: Having thus done, he put Spurs to his Horse, and took his Way speedily towards the Tent. When the *Green Knight* spied him, he was more fearful of him than of all the rest; wherefore he called unto him, saying, Knight, give Ear unto this I shall now say: Seest thou yonder Tree? there shalt thou find hanging a Green Shield, bring it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir (said *Valentine*) you have Servants enough of your own, send them, for by me it shall never be brought. By my Law (quoth the *Green Knight*) you shall either bring me the Shield, or know this you shall never conquer me. When *Valentine* had well considered these Words he spoke touching the bringing of the Shield, he valiantly rode towards the Tree, but he lost his Labour, for he could not lift it, at which he was

sorrowful; and returning unto the *Green Knight* in an angry Mood, said: Go bring thy Shield thyself, for I cannot lift it; wherefore cursed be that Magician, that so fastened it, and an evil End betide him that sent me thither to bring it. Friend, quoth he, shall I tell thee wherefore I sent thee? It was for that this Shield was given me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth such Virtue, that no Man, be he ever so strong, can take it from the Place where it is fastened, save only he alone by whom I shall be overcome; and for the Doubt I stood in of thee, therefore I sent thee thither; now my Doubt is satisfied, and therefore I advise thee to return to the Place from whence thou camest, and save thyself; for seeing thee so fair a Knight I am forced to pity thee, and take no Pleasure in thy Death, from which thou canst not escape if thou fightest with me. Further, to the End thou shouldst not think I utter these Words to abuse thy Patience, know this, that there is none living that can vanquish me, Except first he be the Son of a King, and next, such a one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman: Now, if thou art such a one thou mayest overcome me, if not, thou dost but shorten thine own Days by an untimely Death. At these Words *Valentine* took little Pleasure, knowing that by this Relation he could not be that Man; but seeing that he was come to that Enterprize, he would not return till he had tried his Strength against him; and therefore with a loud Voice he spoke thus: Valiant and redoubted Knight, I well understand I am not the Man by whom you shall be conquered: yet whosoever I am, I will not depart hence till I have fought with you. 'By the Gods (quoth the *Green Knight*) then thou hast some secret Treason to work against me, that thus thou runnest upon thy Death wilfully; but e'er I part with thee I'll make thee know the Price of thy rashness. And therewithal he leapt upon his Horse, bidding one of his Servants to bring him a Box of precious Balm; the Virtue of it was such, that what Wound soever he received, tho' never so mortal, it had Power instantly to heal up the Breach. And after he had received it he suddenly put Spurs to his Horse, couching his Spear in his Wrist, both ran so furiously that their Spears broke in many Pieces; and they suddenly bending themselves to the next Course, most valiantly drew out their Swords, in which *Valentine* behaved himself so nimbly that he gave the *Green Knight* so full a Stroke that he cut him thro' the Armour, insomuch that the Blood issued out in abundance

bundance. Feeling himself Wounded, with one Blow struck away a great Piece of *Valentine's* Thigh, and having thus wounded him, said, 'You may see I can wield a Sword as well as you: I told you that you would fall under my Hands; and anon I shall be fain to hang your dead Corpse on a Tree, as I have done the rest that came before you.' *Pagan* (said *Valentine*) vaunt not thyself overmuch, for as yet I am not conquered; therefore defend thyself.' And therewith gave him such a Blow, that he smote away a Quarter of his Shield, and the *Green Knight* at the same Encounter broke his Sword upon the Helm of *Valentine*, and felled him off his Horse. *Valentine* being always valiant, suddenly recovered. The *Pagan* seeing him rise, drew a sharp pointed Knife, and threw it at him; but he seeing it come, started aside, in that it mist him. The *Green Knight* being thus unarmed, turned about his Horse, thinking to have recovered them again; but *Valentine* being on the Ground, and seeing a fit Opportunity, cut off his Horse's Feet, so that they both came tumbling to the Earth; being on the Earth, he suddenly arose, and then they were both together, by strength of Arms holding each other: But in short the Battle was so fierce, that they were both sore wounded. The *Pagan* quickly healed his with the Balm before spoken of. This fight continued so long, that the Day shut in, and both began to be weary. The *Green Knight* was grieved that he could not overcome him, and tho' he was even spent, yet he proudly bore it out, saying, Knight give over, for I perceive thy Weariness, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little Honour for me to conquer thee; return again to *Aquitain*, and rest there this Night, and report that there never encountered me so valiant a Knight as thou art. But meet me Tomorrow, and before thy coming, take Leave of all thy Friends, for thou shalt never return. *Valentine* accepted his Offer, and was glad thereof; so mounting his Horse he returned to the City. When Duke *Survary* and his Lords saw him, they were joyful, and received him with great Honour: Among the rest assembled was *Orson*, who ran and caught him in his Arms, and kissed him. Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded what Tidings from the *Green Knight*? Sir, (said *Valentine*) he resteth in his Pavillion, and I think he is of that Strength and Courage that there is no Man living able to vanquish him. *Valentine*, (quoth the Duke) you have escaped well, never did any return, but all have perished; wherefore you have proved yourself a

valiant Knight. Gracious Duke, (said he) of my Conquest I can make but small Boast; but Tomorrow there is appointed a new Trial, and the Victory may light upon him whom the Gods please to favour. Having ended Conference with the Duke, *Valentine* was unarmed, and conducted to the Chamber of the Lady *Fezon*. The Lady was right joyful to see him return with Life. By this Time Supper drew on, and the Duke taking his Place at the Table, caused *Valentine* to be set on his right Hand; for the Duke did honour him in the highest Degree. Supper ended, *Valentine* withdrew himself to his private Chamber, and the *Green Knight* rested in his Pavillion; where we leave him, and speak of *Valentine*, who being in his Chamber made many Complaints.

C H A P. XIV.

How Valentine took Advice, and sent Orson on the Morrow to fight the Green Knight; and how Orson overcame him,

Valentine having appointed the Morrow to fight with the *Green Knight*, began to be troubled, as he lay in Bed, still thinking on what happened the Day before: At last, when he had ruminated all his Imaginations, he began to resolve in this Manner: 'I am not, neither can I be that King's Son that should overcome the *Green Knight*; for I cannot remove the Shield he sent me for; neither was I nourished without the Breast of a Woman. Again, I am very doubtful of the Combat, and therefore stand wavering whereupon to rely.' At last he began thus to think: 'What if *Orson* should be armed in my stead, and try the worst of Fortune's Wreck? Why it shall be so.' The break of Day appearing, he rose, and coming to *Orson*, he told him by Signs, that he should put on his Armour, take his Horse, and make towards the *Green Knight's* Pavillion to fight with him. *Orson* understanding his intent, leaped and danced up and down joyfully, making Signs that the *Green Knight* should never escape; denying his Horse and Arms, desiring only a Club, such a one as he was accustomed to; and shaking his Head, made Signs that he would have no other Armour. *Valentine* seeing this gave him to understand that he must put on the same Armour, and ride on the same Horse, so that the *Green Knight* should not know but it was *Valentine* that came against him. *Orson* understanding the Subtilty intended, agreed to it; and being thus armed, contrary to his Custom, he seemed personable, and made many Signs that he would overcome the *Green Knight* e'er Noon, without Mercy or Pity; and in these

these Signs he was so earnest, that he caused great Laughter. *Orson* being thus prepared, took his Leave of the Duke, embraced *Valentine*, and made him Signs to stand in fear of nothing, for before he returned he would bring the *Green Knight* either alive or Dead. But before he took Horse, he went to take Leave of the Lady *Fezon*; and spying her would have ran and kissed her; and by Signs he gave her to understand, that for the Love of her he would fight with the *Pagan Knight*. The Lady in a Smile, retorted by Signs, that she loved him well; wishing him to bear himself valiantly, and at his Return she would grant him Love. Thus having

taken his Leave, he betook him to his Horse, and being gone from the Palace, there was nothing so much talked of as the wild Man's Combat with the *Green Knight*, at which was much Wonder. It was not long till *Orson* came to the Pavillion of the *Green Knight*, and smote the Top thereof with his Spear, signifying Defiance. The *Green Knight* taking this rustic Salutation in great Scorn, swore by *Mabomet* that he would settle his Pride e'er the Evening; and therewithal mounted on his Steed, and couching his Spear, he entered the Field. *Orson* seeing him in a Readiness, seemed to give back as if half afraid; but presently having gathered



more Courage, they encountered with such Force that both Horses and Men fell to the Earth; being both down, they lightly recovered, drew their Swords, and laid one at the other fiercely. The *Green Knight* being fired with anger, smote *Orson* such a Blow that he cut the Circle of Gold on his Helm, and smote a Piece of his Shield quite off, and wounded him so deeply, that with the Violence of the Stroke the Sword fell out of his Hand. *Orson* seeing the Blood run down, was far more fierce, rolling his Eyes, and shaking his Head; at last he gave the Giant such a Blow on the Head that he

entered the Flesh, and bore part thereof before him, and his Sword sliding off his Head, took him on the Arm so powerful, that the Blood followed in abundance. The *Green Knight* having his Balm feared no Wounds; which made *Orson* think it was in vain any longer to use his Sword, since he could heal himself so quickly. Upon this *Orson* threw away his Armour and Weapons, and suddenly ran upon him, and caught him fast by the Arms, and cast him on the Ground, took off his Helm, and held him so down that the *Green Knight* yielded to his Mercy. *Orson* not regarding his Submission, would

would have taken away his Life, if *Valentine* had not come to his Rescue, by riding Post to see the end of the Combat. Being come, he made Signs to *Orson* that he should not kill him, which *Orson* obey'd. At last *Valentine* began to speak to the *Green Knight*, saying, 'Proud Knight, you see you are in the Hands of your Enemy, wherefore I think it fit you suffer present Death; for look how you have served the vanquished Knights, by hanging them on yonder Tree; so likewise yourself shall be hanged on the highest Branch. Alas! (quoth he) you seem to be a Man of Pity, furnished with Courtesy; therefore my request is, to spare my Life. No (quoth *Valentine*) that I shall not, except upon Conditions; First, that you renounce your Paganism: Secondly go with me into *France*, and tell King *Pepin*, that by *Valentine* and *Orson* you were overcome in single Combat. To all these Conditions I willingly agree; and thereunto I take my Oath, to perform what you have already spoken.

Then *Valentine* made Signs to *Orson* that he should rise, which he readily obeyed, but so that he left nothing about him to make any Resistance. Being upon his Feet, he spoke thus to *Valentine*, Sir, it was you that combated against me Yesterday, therefore you, and none but you, did I expect this Day also; but I see I am conquered by the Man that in the Duke's Palace threw me on the Ground. True (quoth *Valentine*) the very same Man. Why then (quoth the *Green Knight*) I shall reveal unto thee one secret more, and I beseech you grant unto me my Request, Send this Knight that hath conquered me unto yonder Tree, and if he bring away with him the Shield there fastened, then I'll be well assured he is the Man that should conquer me. Hereupon *Valentine* made a Sign unto *Orson* to bring away the Shield, who did as he appointed him; and coming near the Tree, he stretched forth his Arm to take it down, and suddenly it leap'd into his Hand, and he brought it with him to the *Green Knight*. When he saw *Orson* have the Shield, his Heart smote against his Sides, and throwing himself at his Feet, would have kissed him; but *Orson* received Signs from *Valentine* to the contrary, and would not suffer him, but took him by the Arms and lifted him up. Being upon his Feet, he spoke thus: Alas! I of all others, owe unto you all my Service and Reverence: for now I am assured that you are both a hardy and valiant Knight; and amongst all others, I confess that by conquering me, you have won unto yourself everlasting Fame. Moreover, this assure yourself, he that conquered me can be no less than the Son of a King and Queen, and must be such a

one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman. And that this shall appear to be Truth, I shall further prove it by my Sister *Clerimond*; for she hath a Head of Brass, that telleth the Adventures and Fortunes, that to her and all her Generation shall befall; likewise, this Head shall continue speaking till such time as the worthiest Knight in all the World enter into the Chamber where it now standeth; and being once entered, the said Head shall lose its Virtue, and he is the only man to have my Sister *Clerimond* to Wife; wherefore fair Knight, these things thus fallen out as you see, I greatly desire you to wed my Sister, as the most renowned Knight in the whole World.

C H A P. XV.

How *Orson* having conquered the *Green Knight*, *Valentine* caused him to be Christened, and sent to King *Pepin*; and how he got Knowledge of his Father and Mother by Means of the *Green Knight*. How the same Night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angel appeared to *Valentine*, and of the Charge he gave him.

THE *Green Knight* having made this Motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto *Valentine* a Ring of Gold, upon Condition that he would carry that Ring unto her: which Ring *Valentine* accepted, and the *Green Knight* yielded himself a Prisoner, and is now going towards *France* to accomplish his Oath, which before he had given him, *Valentine* having received this Ring, never rested till he had seen the Lady so recommended to him. After this the *Green Knight* by consent was crowned King of the *Green Mountain*, and there held great State. Presently upon this League of Friendship concluded, he gave command throughout all his Host, that every Man should depart from the Confines of *Aquitain*, and return home, without doing any further Damage to Duke *Savary's* Country. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, *Valentine* and *Orson* took and led him as a Prisoner into the City of *Aquitain*, at which there was great Joy, and the Duke with all his Lords received them with great triumph into the City. The *Green Knight* being thus brought as a Prisoner to the Duke, began to say in this Manner; My Lords, you owe much Honour to the Knight that hath conquered me. And further, I give you to understand for certain, that he can be no less than the Son of a King; and also, that he never sucked Woman's Breast, for if he had, he could never have been my Conqueror, for so it was ever said by the Brazen-Head, that standeth in the Chamber of my Sister *Clerimond*. (Quoth the Duke) Well, this may carry some likelihood

lihood of Truth, for he hath borne himself valiantly against you, wherefore I think it my part to honour him with my utmost Endeavours. By this time is the worthy Train entered the Duke's Palace, whither the Duke commanded his Daughter's presence; and then said unto her, Daughter, behold here the *Green Knight*, that hath for your Love made Spoil of my Country, and I was not able to repel him back, but only this valiant Knight that *Valentine* hath brought from the Court of King *Pepin*, who hath freed us of our Fears: Wherefore this is my desire, that as he hath conquered my Enemy and yours, so he may also conquer your Love, whereunto I willingly agree. The Duke having thus said, the Lady answered for herself in this Manner: 'My Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no Reason I should resist, but do submit to your disposal; for if I should do otherwise, it were great Disobedience. And again, my Lord, your Promise is already past, that whosoever could vanquish the Pagan Knight, should for his Labour receive me for his Wife. Now, my Lords, the Day of my Deliverance is come, so then according to your Promise, you must give him to me, and I receive him as my lawful Spouse, otherwise I should make void the Edict gone thro' the World, and you be thought false in your Promise.' Daughter, (quoth the Duke) you have spoken right graciously, and your Answer pleaseth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us; wherefore it were not amiss to know of the Conqueror if he will have you; if he agree unto this Matter, I will give him in Dowry half my Country. Hereupon *Valentine* demanded of *Orson* if he would have the Lady *Fezon* to Wife? who answered, that he would never have any other. Then the Duke caused to be brought before him a Priest, who then contracted them; and so their time was passed with many Sports. These things thus ended, *Orson* made Signs unto the Lady, that he would never lie with her until he had gotten the use of his Tongue, and that his Companion *Valentine* had conquered the Love of the Lady *Clerimond*. Of all which you shall hear more hereafter.

The Day being past with great Banquetting and Solemnity, on which *Fezon* was assured unto *Orson*, the Night approached, and every Man betook him unto his Rest: among the rest *Valentine* and *Orson* were lodged most richly: and in the dead Time of the Night, *Valentine* had the Apparition of an Angel appearing unto him, saying, *Valentine*, know this, that in the Morning thou speedily depart this Land, and take along with thee *Orson*,

by whom the *Green Knight* hath been vanquished, and without further Delay get thee unto the Castle of *Ferragus*, there thou shalt find the Lady *Clerimond*, by whom thou shalt understand of whence thou art descended. This strange Vision drove him into a thousand Fears, and in great Melancholy he passed away the Night; the Day being come, he caused *Orson* to rise, and being ready, they hasted to the Duke's Palace, where they found his Barons attending for him, and among the rest the *Green Knight*. Not long after the Duke entered; being entered, the *Green Knight* took Occasion to give him the time of the Day, and began to speak unto him in this Manner: 'Most renowned Duke, I freely confess myself vanquished, and withal renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlasting Peace with you, upon Condition, that you cause me to be Baptised.' 'Knight, (said the Duke) well have you said, I grant your Request.' When the Priest was come that should baptize him, *Valentine* began thus to say: 'Lords and Gentlemen, may it please the valiant Duke to grant me one Favour, which is this, that the Name of this Knight be called *Pepin*; it is the Name of the mighty King of France, that nourished and fostered me even from my Cradle.' The Duke consented unto *Valentine's* Demand; so he was called *Pepin*. After the Baptism, the Duke made a Motion to *Valentine* and *Orson* to wed his Daughter, the beautiful Lady *Fezon*, but *Valentine* not allowing thereof, made this Excuse; that both he and *Orson* had vowed to go to *Jerusalem* ere they did attempt any other Action after the Conquest of the *Green Knight*. The Duke hearing this Excuse, gave them Leave, upon Condition that *Orson* should take an Oath to return again to *Aquitain* at his coming back from thence; to this they both agreed. The same Hour also the *Green Knight* took Leave of the Duke of *Aquitain*, and took his way into France, to keep his promised Faith to King *Pipin*: Before his Departure, *Valentine* asked him for the Ring that he had promised, who gave it unto him, saying: 'Whosoever he be that beareth this about him shall never stand in fear of Drowning, nor be afraid of false accusations.' Then *Valentine* took the Ring and put it on his Finger: So *Orson* and he took Leave, and departed, and went on their way towards the Lady *Clerimond*, to find out the Castle of *Ferragus*; and the *Green Knight* likewise took Leave for France. Much about this time, *Blandiman* Squire to the distressed Lady *Bellifant*, was arrived in King *Pepin's* Court, clad in the Habit of a Pilgrim, and having saluted the King, he wondered at this his unlooked for Shape,

Shape, and at last asked him from what Sepulchre he was come? 'Worthy King, (said *Blandiman*) I am no Pilgrim, altho' I have taken that Shape upon me; but only to come more safely unto you, I have taken this Habit: Wherefore know that I am a Messenger sent from the high and mighty Lady your Sister, that by Treason and false Accusations hath been banished her Country, by the Emperor *Alexander*, and at this Time liveth in great Sorrow of Heart, only for that you have unjustly bent your Heart against her, and sought no Way to relieve her Misery.

C H A P. XVI,

How King Pepin came to know that Valentine and Orson were his Nephews, and how the Green Knight submitted himself according to his Promise.

Blandiman having delivered his Message, the King began to demand where his Sister was? *Blandiman* replied, 'I know right well where she is, but I have given her my Word never to discover it to any: But worthy King, if you doubt her Loyalty, I will bring you a Man that shall fight the Battle, and prove her honest.' Nay, (said the King) I have seen enough thereof already by the downfall of the *Arch-Priest*; also, I have used Means to hear of her, but cannot; but that which grieveth me is, that she was great with Child when she was banished: neither am I sure whether she was delivered of that burthen.' My Lord, (said *Blandiman*) know this for a Truth, that my Lady was delivered in the Forest of *Orleans*; and while she dispatched me to get her the Help of a Woman, e'er I could return, she was delivered of two Sons, the one of which was carried away by a Bear, into the Wood she wist not whither; but she followed so long that at last I found her in a Swoon upon the Ground: Coming to her, I took her up, and comforted her as well as I could, and being somewhat recovered, in woful Sighs she unfolded the manner of her Loss of her Child; and for the other, she laid it under the Tree. Hearing her say so, I hastened to the Tree where I left her; but being come thither, I could not find the other Child. And thus worthy King, I have related the whole Story of your Sister and her two Infants. And other Tidings I have none, but this, I am that *Blandiman* that you ordered to attend her when she married the Emperor. The King giving Ear unto this, said, Alas *Blandiman*, thy Words strike me into a thousand Fears, what should become of my Sister. But seeing thou canst tell me no more, let me know how long ago this happened that thou hast told me. My Lord (quoth he) it was even that Day you met me in the Forest

of *Orleans*, that I related to you the Tidings of your Sister's Banishment. This struck the King in such Admiration, that he began to recollect his Wits, and then presently came into his Mind the finding of *Valentine*, and how by him *Orson* was conquered in the same Wood. Then he began to think of the Story that *Blandiman* had told him, and thereby knew that these were the two Babes brought forth by his Sister; wherefore he sent for the Queen and other Ladies, to let them understand what *Blandiman* had declared; saying, My Lords, I have long Time nourished and brought up in my Court two poor Children, and it now plainly doth appear they are Sons to an Emperor, and my near Kinsmen; *Valentine*, the one whom I found in the Forest, and brought forth by my Sister *Bellissant* in the time of her Exile; and *Orson*, who was likewise vanquished by *Valentine*, to be his Brother, and both Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*. At these Tidings all the Court was very joyful, save only *Haufray* and *Henry*, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their Hearts sorrowful; for above all, they desired the death of *Valentine*, that they might work their wills on their younger Brother *Charlemain*, against whom they chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will appear. But to return to *Blandiman*, who hearing the King speak so much of the Children, demanded of the King if he knew in what Country they were. Why, said the King, one of these I have brought up in my Court in such fashion, that he is become a valiant Knight, and by his valour hath conquered his Brother, being a wild Man then living in the Wood like a Beast, and one that did much Damage to all the Country thereabouts: Having conquered him, he brought him to court, where having lived some small Time, they both departed, and took their way to *Aquitain*, to fight the *Green Knight*, and since their departure I never heard what became of them: 'Sir, said *Blandiman*, according to the Tale you have told, I remember well, that near *Aquitain*, I met two such; but I am troubled I knew them not. The King musing at these Accidents, caused *Blandiman* to be highly feasted, and held as a Companion among his other Lords.

Now it happened, that the same Day the *Green Knight* arrived at *Paris*. As soon as he came into the Presence of the King he saluted him with great Reverence. The King seeing him in Armour, marvelled thereat, and demanded the Cause of his so appearing; who he was, and wherefore he came? The *Green Knight* replied in this Manner: Honourable King, know that I am descended from the

Sarazens

Sarazens both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am the Knight, that for the Love of the Lady *Fezon*, Daughter to the Duke of *Aquitain*, have for one whole Year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my Subjection; and having him under me, I made a Truce with him for six Months upon these Conditions, that if within that Time he found not a Knight that by Force of Arms should conquer me, I was to have his fair Daughter *Fezon* to Wife; on the other side, if I was conquered, I should remove away my Siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing any further Damage. So it is, that I have been often fought by valiant Knights of divers Countries, yet there was none that could overcome me, but endured Death, and are there still hanging upon a Tree: At last it fell out, that there assailed me two worthy Knights, the one named *Valentine* and the other *Orson*: *Valentine* fought with me one whole Day, wherein he bore himself so bravely, that Night coming on, we were forced to give over, all wounded, tired and weary: The next Morning when the Battle should be again renewed, his Fellow *Orson* armed in *Valentine's* Armour, entered the Field in a most fierce and disdainful Manner, offering me Defiance: I scorning my Competitor, addressed out myself against him; but little availed my Strength, for in the End he overcame me, and would have taken away my Life, had not *Valentine* come in upon us, and rescued me, upon these Conditions; First, that I should forsake *Mahomet*; Secondly, that I should come unto you, and yield myself at your Command, and to stand at your Censure, either in Life or Death. Again, when I received Baptism, he caused me to be called *Pepin*, and so is my Name.

The King having heard all this long Story from the *Green Knight*, made this Answer in the Presence of all his Barons: Welcome to us, and of your Company we are right glad, live with us in our Court; and be jocund, for I freely grant you your Life, and promise you further, that if you will tarry with us, in our Country, I will endow you with many fair Lands and Possessions. The King shewing himself thus gracious, demanded of him where these Knights were that had conquered him. 'Marry (quoth the *Green Knight*) I left them both at *Aquitain* with the valiant Duke *Savary*, who holdeth them in as great Respect as any that are within his Court.' Thus you may now perceive, that by the Words of *Blindman* and the *Green Knight*, King *Pepin* had perfect intelligence of his beauteous Sister, and his two valiant Nephews. After these Tidings, King

Pepin made a solemn Vow, that he would go himself in Person into *Greece*, to tell the Emperor of this joyful News, and to take Order to send abroad into all Lands to find her out.

C H A P. XVII.

How King Pepin departed from France, towards Greece, to bear these Tidings; how he found Constantinople besieged by the Soldan of Egypt; How the Green Knight justed with two Sarazens, and overcame them: Of the Battles that were fought; and the Armies entering the City.

KING *Pepin* having put himself in a Readiness to depart into *Greece*, went forth; and before much Time was spent arrived at *Rome*, where the Pope received him very joyfully; but as soon as he was set at Dinner, News was brought him that the Soldan of *Egypt* with a mighty Army had besieged *Constantinople*; whereupon resolving to go to the Relief of it, he craved Aid of the Pope, who readily granted it; and Forces were immediately raised in all the Territories of the Church, who cheerfully assembled themselves under so courageous a General; and so King *Pepin* coming to *Constantinople*, he found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great Fear of the Soldan's Army, betaking themselves to the City, keeping the same against the Force of the Pagans. The Emperor was close confined in the City, by Reason of the long continued Siege: but when he heard Relief was come, he took Courage, at which the Pagans were much alarmed; but the Soldan with big Words encouraged them, not only to subdue *Constantinople*, but *Rome* itself; lessening and deriding the Valour of the Christian Army. But King *Pepin* resolving to fight his way into the City, sent Letters to the Emperor to make a vigorous Sally at such Time as he should give the Signal, and so marched towards the Enemy. The Soldan upon this, put his Men in order, to discover the Number of his Enemies. The *Green Knight* who was advanced before the Christian Army, with the like Intent on the other Side, perceiving them coming by the Side of the Hill, and knowing them to be his Enemies, addressed himself to Encounter, and broke his Launce against the foremost; then a dreadful Combat began between them, and in fine, killed one, and put the other to Flight. The King upon this good Omen, charged the Soldan's Battle with great Fury, wherein *Millain Douglar* slew the King of *Equile*, and three others e'er he left the Field: This made the Soldan and his choicest Men come up, and furiously set upon *Douglar*, who valiantly defended himself,

himself, till his Horse being wounded fell under him, and there had been slain, but that the *Green Knight* rescued and remounted him: Then great was the Slaughter on both Sides, for the Emperor issuing out with his Army, the Infidels were in a manner hemmed in; and King *Pepin* pressing on, cried, 'Courage noble Brother, you shall have News of your Lady *Bellifant*;' this made him encourage his Men to the utmost, crying for *Constantinople*, which so heartened them, especially with his own and King *Pepin's* Example that they fought like Lions. The *Green Knight* and other Champions made a terrible Slaughter, so that the *Sarazens* began to fall into Disorder, and fly; but the King of *Sclavonia* coming with fifty thousand fresh Men, restored the Battle, which continued bloody and doubtful; but King *Pepin* and the Emper finding they were over-numbered, and the Enemy had fresh Succours, thought fit to retire into the City, which they did, and there being closely begirt with a Siege, endured extream Famine; where we must leave them to follow *Valentine* and *Orson*, who for the Love of *Clerimond* have adventured, as you have already heard.

C H A P. XVIII.

How Valentine and Orson arrived at the strong Castle wherein the Lady Clerimond was; and how by the Brazen-Head they had knowledge of their Parents.

AFTER many Days Travel, at last *Valentine* and *Orson* lighted upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle, strong and Impregnable, the Covering whereof was of shining Metal, glittering in the Sun, that it drove *Valentine* into Suspicion whether it was the same, when unto the *Green Knight* had directed him to have a Sight of the fair Lady *Clerimond*. At all Adventures, he made Way towards the Castle, By one of the Ports thereof. And being entered, he demanded who was owner of that Castle, which appeared so sumptuous to the Eye? Answer was returned, that the Castle was in the keeping of the fair Lady *Clerimond*, Sister unto the Giant *Ferragus*, and built by a mighty Man in Substante, a *Sarazen*; the which *Sarazen*, among all other his excellent Works done to this Castle, had caused one Chamber to be richly adorned, of which more shall be spoken in its Place.

Moreover, it was told unto *Valentine* among other Things, that in the Chamber stood an excellent Pillar made by Art, upon which stood a Head of Brass, composed a long time ago by the Necromancy of a Fairy, which Head was of such an excellent Composition, that it gave Answer to any thing that

was demanded; *Valentine* hearing this strange Relation of the Castle, was right Glad; for now he was verily persuaded, that it must needs be the Castle he had so long time sought, and wherein the *Green Knight* told him he should find his Sister, so highly praised of all Nations for her excellent Beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left questioning any further, and went on his Way accompanied with *Orson*, to see if he could get Entrance into the Castle. By this time they were come to the Gates thereof, where thinking to enter, they were resisted by Ten sturdy Knights, that kept the Gates Night and Day.

When they saw *Valentine* and *Orson* offering to enter, they said unto them: Lords, or whatsoever you be, withdraw yourselves back, for into this Castle entereth none, of what Birth soever, without the Leave and Licence of a Maiden, to whom we (as Guard) do appertain. 'Why?' (quoth *Valentine*) go tell her, and ask her whether it be her Pleasure we enter or not. Hereupon, one of them entered the Chamber where the fair *Clerimond* was, and kneeling unto her, said, Lady, before your Gate standeth two Gallants that would enter your Castle; they seem fierce and courageous, full of high Spirits, and Men far disagreeing from the Laws and Religion of our Country: Now, fair Lady, say, shall they have Entrance? Descend (quoth the Lady) while I go forth into a Window to take a View of them, and let the Gates be surely kept, for I mean to question them myself. The Porter did as she had commanded. Then *Clerimond*, that was well languag'd, lean'd out of a Window, upon a Cushion covered with Gold, and said unto *Valentine*: 'What are you, that dare enter my Castle without my Leave?' Lady (quoth *Valentine* with an undaunted Courage) I am a Knight that Travelleth this Way, and would gladly speak with the Head of Brass that remaineth in this Castle, if it be your Pleasure, because I understand it resolveth Doubts. 'Knight (quoth the Lady) upon these Terms you may not enter; but if you can bring me certain Signs from one of my Brethren, King *Ferragus*, or the *Green Knight*, Lord of *Tartary*, then you may freely enter this Castle, or by no other Means: Yet you may enter, that is, by the Seneschal of this Place, with whom you must run six Courses with your Spear, to try your Valour: wherefore, now be advised, either fetch me some certain Token from one of my Brothers, or try your Fortune in single Combat as I have told you.' Lady, (quoth *Valentine*) against your Seneschal I dare adventure, for I had rather win my entrance by pond'rous Blows, than

than by Entreaties and fawning Speeches.' This Choice chose *Valentine*, rather than to bewray the Ring which he had brought along with him, given by the *Green Knight* to present to his Sister *Clerimond*. The Lady seeing his resolute Hardiness, suddenly fell in Love with him, and presently went into the Chamber where the Head of Brass stood, and said unto it: 'What is that Knight of Courage, that would so gladly enter this Castle?' 'Lady, (quoth the Head) of that Knight you shall know nothing until such Time as you have brought him before me.' *Clerimond* at this Answer seemed very sorrowful, for she was greatly in Love with *Valentine*.

C H A P. XIX.

How (when Valentine was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) Clerimond bewailed the Love of Valentine: and how he justed for the Entrance, and overcame the Seneschal.

Clerimond pondered in her Mind the Words of *Valentine*, and being overcome with Affection, said in this Manner: 'Ah! *Valentine* is valorous and beautiful, and if I have Power over the Head of Brass, I shall never take other Husband than this Knight.' Hereupon she sent for the Seneschal, and told him, that this Knight would enter the Castle. The Seneschal hereat enraged, began thus; 'Lady, if he be so hardy as to attempt it, I shall quickly make him know that he cometh too late to gain your Love.'

'Seneschal, (said the Lady) since it must be so, arm yourself presently;' and so he departed to put himself in Armour: Being armed, he mounted his Horse, couched his Spear in his Wrist, and withal issued out of the Gate in Readiness. The Lady also got into a Window to behold the Combat. When *Valentine* saw the Seneschal coming towards him, he couched his Spear, and put Spurs to his Horse, and met so fiercely, that their Spears broke in Pieces: Then getting a new Supply, they met so fiercely again, that they fell to the Ground, Horse and Man; but *Valentine's* Horse got up with his Master: *Valentine* being thus saved by his Horse, said unto the Seneschal, 'Rise up and remount yourself, for there is no Honour in conquering an Enemy at an Advantage.' Whereupon the Seneschal was fresh mounted, and new Spears given them again; then they took a fresh Career; and herewithal, *Valentine* so encountered him about the Head, that he bore away his Helm, and threw both Horse and Man to the Earth. The Seneschal finding himself in Danger, said thus unto *Valentine*; 'Knight, I know not from whence you are, nor of what Parentage, but never in my Life found I a Man of thy Valour; wherefore I yield,

and withal give thee Leave to enter this Castle at thy Pleasure, (only upon this Condition, that you speak not unto the Lady *Clerimond* without my Leave.)' Quoth *Valentine*, thou hast requested that which I will not grant; and know, it was for her Love I came hither, and tho' I never yet saw her, yet are my Thoughts on Fire: Therefore from hence I will never part till I have spoken with her, and also with the Brazen Head. The Lady all this while standing at the Window, wondering what Conference passed between these two Champions, at last said thus unto one of her Maidens; See how indiscreet the Seneschal is, to fight with such a valiant Knight, who long since might have taken away his Life. When *Valentine* saw the great Pride of the Seneschal, and that he stood it out with him being his Prisoner, he presently ran against him another Course, and therewithal gave him so deadly a Stroke, that he ran him quite thro' the Body, so that he fell off his Horse Stone-dead; at which the Lady *Clerimond* was exceeding joyful, commanding them to set open the Gates, and that *Valentine* should be brought up unto her, in the great Hall. When the Lady beheld *Valentine* well, she came towards him, and said unto him in this Manner: 'Knight, you are most welcome, for I never saw a more valiant and courageous Man all the Days of my Life: Enter my Castle, for it appeareth by your Valour and Chivalry, that you are descended from the Loins of some Royal Stock.' Lady, know this for a Certainty, my Name is *Valentine*, a poor Adventurer, for neither myself nor this my Companion, ever yet knew from what Parentage we descended; he was nourish'd by a Bear in the Forest, and lived there like a wild Man till I conquered him by my Sword, besides he never spoke in his Life more than you see at this Instant. Wherefore, Lady, thus far have I travelled to get Knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the Love of you, being so fair a Lady.

C H A P. XX.

How Valentine shewed Clerimond her Brother's Ring, which the Green Knight gave him; and how he questioned the Brazen Head, which told him from whence he was descended.

Valentine having purchased free Entrance by overcoming the Seneschal; at last, he shewed the Ring that the *Green Knight* had given him, and smiling, delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the Token, saying, 'Fair Knight, had you shewed this Ring when you craved Access into the Castle, you had never endured the Danger you have now escap'd, but since it hath pleased you to try your Valour,

Valour, I cannot better commend you than to admire your brave courageous Heart. Whilst *Valentine* was thus fixed just against her, in whom she placed her greatest Felicity, and he in her: Dinner being ended, *Clerimond* arose from the Table, and taking *Valentine* by the Hand, said thus unto him; 'Sir, well have you purchased your Welcome, deserving to enter into my most private Chamber, and so you shall, even that Chamber wherein the Brazen Head standeth, which shall declare all that you can desire; and make no Doubt but it will tell you most joyful Tidings; wherefore both you and your Companion come along with me, for I gladly long to hear as you desire to be heard.' At which *Valentine* grew exceeding joyful; first, that he now should understand that which he long desired to know; secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their Way out of the Hall, she brought them unto that Chamber; being come to the Door thereof, and thinking Nothing, they found the Chamber Door guarded in this Manner: On the one Side, a grim, fearful, ill-shaped Villain, strong and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his Neck, who offered to make Resistance: On the other Side of the Chamber Door, stood a most fierce Lion; these two continually kept the Door, that none could enter in without the Lady's Leave, or else fight with this Villain and Lion. *Valentine* perceiving these two Watchmen to make Resistance, demanded of the fair Lady *Clerimond* the Meaning thereof? who answer'd, These two you see here, are to keep the Door, that none may enter without fighting with them, and divers have perished in their Presumption; and again, the Lion is of such Fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, unless the Son of a King, and to such he shews himself very loving.

Lady, (quoth *Valentine*) happen what will, yet I mean to try my Fortune with the Lion; and by main Strength caught him about the Body, on which the Lion forsook him, and let him pass. *Orson* likewise assailed the Villain, and e'er he could be ready to lift up his Club of Iron, he took him by the Middle so strongly, that he threw him against the Wall; he took away his Club, and gave him such a Blow, that he tumbled him on the Ground; and had it not been for the Lady *Clerimond*, he had slain him in that Place. Being both thus vanquished, the Gate was opened, and they enter'd the Chamber, wherein they could see all the World could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Sapphires, with a great Multitude of precious Stones. Within this Chamber was four Pillars of Jasper, marvellous rich, of which two

of them were yellow like fine Gold, and a third more green than Grass, the fourth more red than a flame of fire; between these Pillars was a precious Stone, called an Amery, more rich than the Heart of Man can devise; in the Midst of which stood a Head of Brass, set upon a rich Pillar. *Valentine* wondering at the Richness of those Objects, fixed his Eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it would publickly open concerning his Birth. At length when every Voice was silent, the Head began to speak after this Manner: 'Thou famous Knight of Royal Perentage, art called *Valentine* the valiant, of whom it may justly be said, there never was the like appeared before thee; thou art the Man, who of right ought to marry with the Lady *Clerimond*: Thou art Son to the Emperor of Greece, and thy Mother's Name is *Bellissant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of France, who, by wrong Suggestions, hath been banished her Country and her Husband's Bed: Know thy Mother is in Portugal, in the Castle of *Ferragus*, who hath had the Keeping of her these twenty Years. King *Pepin* is thy Uncle, and the wild Man who hath accompanied thee, is thy own Brother; you two were delivered from the Body of the Empress *Bellissant* in the Forest of Orleans; and being brought forth, thy Companion was taken away by a ravenous Bear, and by her was nourished in the Wood among her Whelps, and he never sucked any other. For thy Part, *Valentine*, thou wast found the very same Day in the Forest, by King *Pepin*, who hath nourished thee tenderly, and brought thee up to Man's Estate: Further, thus much I shall also tell thee, that this thy Brother here present, shall never have the Use of his Tongue till a Thread be cut under the same, and thou shalt hear him speak plainly. Therefore, proceed as thou hast begun, and thou shalt prosper, for my Time is at a Period since thou art come, and have entered this Chamber.'

Valentine marking well all that the Head had uttered, fell upon the Bosom of his Brother *Orson*, and *Orson* upon his, and with kind Embraces they embraced each other. The Lady seeing all this, began to break out into these speeches: Alas! courteous Knight, I of all others ought most to rejoice at this thy happy arrival, for by you I am freed from ten Years Grief of Heart, which I have severely undergone hitherto. Again, by this Brazen Head, I understand that you have ever been the Man on whom my Affections should rest, and whereunto I gently agree (if you please) to take you for my wedded Lord.

'Lady,

'Lady, (quoth *Valentine*) I accept you as my wedded Wife, who was given to me by your Brother the *Green Knight*, that was vanquished by my Brother *Orson* before the City of *Aquitain*: Only this I shall request, that as your Brother the *Green Knight* hath forsaken *Mabomet*, so you would do the like. 'Sir, (quoth she) I shall gladly please you in any thing you shall command me, and be obedient to you in every Point whilst you and I shall live.' On which great Joy attended the Inhabitants of this Castle, for they were right glad of the Tidings that the Brazen Head had declared unto him. After this, the Reputation of *Valentine* increased more and more; But all his former Joy and Gladness was suddenly eclipsed by the Treachery of her Brother *Ferragus*, as hereafter shall be more fully declared.

CHAP. XXI.

How the Giant Ferragus had Knowledge of all that past between his Sister and Valentine, by the Means of Pacolet, a Dwarf and Enchanter.

NOW you shall understand, that within this Castle where *Clerimond* was, dwelt a Dwarf, (named *Pacolet*) which the Lady nourished and brought up from a Child, bestowing much Cost to have him taught in Schools. This *Pacolet*, being of more Age than Stature, grew exceeding witty, and at last studied the Black-art, and therein grew so famous in Necromancy, that by Enchantment he had composed a little Horse made of Wood; in the Head of which Horse he had so artificially conveyed a Pin of Wood, that every Time he mounted on his Back to ride abroad, he would turn the Pin towards



the Place he would go unto, and suddenly he would be in the same Place without Danger; for the Horse could run thro' the Air swifter than any Bird. This *Pacolet* being in the Castle, observed the Behaviour of *Valentine*, and when he had fit Time, addressed himself towards *Portugul*, to bear News to *Ferragus* how Matters had passed in the Castle. So he betook himself to his wooden Horse, and in a Moment of Time setting the Pin to that Part, he arrived there according to his desired Wish, and related the Story unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* heard

his Tale, he grew exceeding angry with *Valentine*, that he should have his Sister in Marriage: Also he grew enraged at her, that she should grant her Love unto him, (being a Christian Knight) swearing by his Gods, to take Revenge upon them both: But all this he dissembled unto *Pacolet*, bidding him return, and bear this Message unto *Clerimond*, That the Knight *Valentine*, who shall have her, is right welcome, and that e'er long I will come in Person to visit them, accompanied with a gallant Troop of Nobles; and then shall their Nuptials be royally solemnized,

lemnized. So *Pacolet* took Leave and got on Horseback, and was in an Instant at home again. Being come, he presently went into the Presence of the Lady *Clerimond*, and said unto her: Madam, I have been in *Portugal* with your Brother *Ferragus*, who is glad of your Choice with *Valentine*, and promiseth e'er long to be here in Person, and to make a royal Marriage. At this Tale, the Lady stood amazed, and at last began to answer him thus: Ah! *Pacolet*, is this true thou hast told? Ah me! the Gods defend my Brother from plotting any Treason against me; for I am well assured he could never love a Knight of *France*, nor any other that is a Christian; I am right angry that thou did not acquaint me with thy Departure, for I had serious Business for thee to do; which was to have enquired there for a Christian Woman, one that for a long Time hath had her Abode with my Brother *Ferragus*, in the Castle that he now holdeth.

C H A P. XXII.

How Pacolet hereupon, made another expeditious Journey into Portugal, to see the Lady Bellifant, Valentine's Mother: Of his returning back, and the News he brought.

THE Lady having ended her Tale, *Pacolet* made her this Answer: Lady, since you are so earnest, I shall for your Sake make another Journey into *Portugal*, and before To-morrow Mid-day, I shall bring you Tidings whether she be there or no. *Valentine* hearing him say so, replied, That thou canst not do, except the Devil be in thee. The Lady *Clerimond* said unto *Valentine*, Let him alone, for by Art he hath provided that he will ride more than a thousand Miles a Day. At which *Valentine* marvelled much, and called *Orson* unto him, and then cut the Thread from under his Tongue that hindered his Speech, which being done, he spoke presently, and unmediately related the Story of his Life led in the Forest, which held them most part of the Evening. On the Morrow, according as *Pacolet* had promised, he was found in the Hall before *Valentine*, saying unto him in this Manner: Sir, I am returned from *Portugal*, and have seen your Mother in good Health. Friend, (quoth *Valentine*) then thou art right welcome, for it is she I only desire to hear of. Love, (quoth *Clerimond*) be not too hasty, for if my Brother come not hither, we will go into *Portugal* to him, and then we shall have our Hearts Desire. Nay, surely (quoth *Pacolet*) your Brother will come hither. Ay, (quoth the Lady) but I stand in Fear of him, lest he work some Treason against us; for this last Night I dreamed a most fearful Dream, at which I was very

much affrighted, and thus it was: I dreamed I was in a great Water, in which I should have perished, had it not been for a great Face that drew me out thereof; being out, methought I saw a Griffin issue out of a Cloud, who, with his Talons, took me up and carried me I know not whither. 'Love, (quoth *Valentine*) give no Regard to Dreams, for they be but Delusions of a melancholy Mind.' 'Tis true, (quoth she) but they trouble me every Night.' Having ended this Discourse, they entered into a fair Arbour, garnished with Variety of Flowers, reposing themselves some few Hours in pleasant Dalliance, where we will leave them; and you shall hear, that the same Day arrived *Ferragus* the Traitor, at the Castle of *Clerimond*.

The Lady hearing of his Coming, presently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and said unto her: Sister, above all Creatures living, I have most desired to see you; tell me, I pray you, which is the Knight you mean to make your Husband? This (loving Brother) is the Man. Whereupon *Valentine* saluted him with great Reverence. 'Ferragus said unto him, Fair Knight, ye be welcome unto these Quarters for the Love of my Sister *Clerimond*: And seeing it is so fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the *Green Knight*, and sent him into *France*, causing him to be christened, even so have I great Desire to be baptized, and become a Christian, and follow your Religion.'

Valentine believed all these Words which he had spoken; but under these fair Promises he smothered Treason; yet at last *Valentine* began to say unto him: 'Sir, it is reported to me, that within your Castle, for the Space of these twenty Years, you have entertained a Christian Woman, who is Mother unto me, whom I would gladly see; her Name is *Bellifant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*, and Wife unto the Emperor of *Greece*.' By *Mabomet*, said *Ferragus*, you say Truth, and to the End your Eyes shall behold her, you shall go along with me into *Portugal*, so shall you be rightly informed whether she be the Lady you seek or no. Gramercy, (quoth *Valentine*) and so *Ferragus* left him, and said unto his Sister *Clerimond* in this Manner: 'Sister, my Soul's Joy, I desire your Advancement more than any Thing on Earth, and am glad you have found out so worthy and valiant a Knight for your Husband; wherefore, to knit up all at once, my Desire is, that you would go with me into *Portugal*, and there, with the Consent and Applause of my Nobles, we shall highly solemnize your Nuptial Day.

C H A P.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Valentine and Orson were betrayed by the Treachery of Ferragus; and how he committed them to Prison; with their woful Lamentation.

Ferragus having thus gotten their Consent to depart for *Portugal*, put all his Ships in a Readiness, and packing up their Provision, they put forth to Sea. Being now at Sea, *Ferragus* fell from all his former Words of Comfort, and began to plot the Death of *Valentine* and *Orson*; and in the dead Time of the Night, when the two Brethren were at Rest in their Cabbin, he caused them secretly to be taken forth off their Beds and committed to Bands, muffling their Eyes so, that they could not see. Now when *Clerimond* saw what was done to her Love, she fell into an extreme Agony, and with watry Eyes, began thus to vent her Lamentations: 'Alas! dear *Valentine*, our Joys are suddenly turned into Sorrow, thou hast bought my Love at too dear a Rate, when thou art not only misused, but in Danger of thy Life; cursed be the Day of my Birth, for with much Danger hast thou purchased my Love. Alas! alas! what shall I do? rent Heart, weep forth my Eyes, when such a valiant, magnanimous Knight must be thus tortured for my Sake: Brother, thou hast deceived the Trust I put in thee, by working so foul an Act against my Love: Thou hast robbed me of all my Joy, and brought upon me untimely Death. Further, know this, that if you put to Death these two Knights, you will carry to your Grave the Name of a Villain. Let them alone, their Death will work you small Content: Or if there be no other Remedy, spare them and seize first upon me, and cast me into the Sea, for I would not live to see two such Innocents falsely put to Death without Desert.' Yea, even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with Sorrow of Heart she would have slain herself, or else violently have leaped overboard into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate Fit, gave strict Command that she should not so much as speak a Word with either of the Prisoners. Thus leaving her to her Lamentations, and the Christians, both *Valentine* and *Orson*, fast bound in Bands. *Valentine* perceiving himself thus betrayed, began thus to bewail his hard Hap: 'Alas! (quoth he) how contrarily hath Fortune dealt with me? I have spent all my Youth in Travel and Danger, only to find out the Parents that begat me, and see now when Hope had well nigh set an End to all my Sorrows, I am unhappily fallen into the Hands of mine Enemies, that only seek my Death. Alas! Brother

Orson, how suddenly are all our Joys blasted, and our Mirth turned into Mourning? In this wise complained *Valentine* and *Orson*, but all this While they were on their Way towards *Portugal*, and shortly arrived at the Castle of *Ferragus*. Being there arrived, Tidings were brought to the Lady *Bellissant*, that two Christian Knights were come along with them as Prisoners: at which News she quickly left the Chamber, and came to have a Sight of them: When she was come near unto them, and had well viewed them, at last she said thus unto them: Children, (quoth she) out of what Country be you, or where were you born? Lady, (quoth *Valentine*) we be of *France* and born not far from *Paris*. *Ferragus* perceiving the Lady to speak unto them, sharply rebuked her, saying: Lady, leave off your questioning, for except they renounce their Faith, they shall miserably end their Days in Prison: And therewithal called to him a Jailor, and committed them to a Dungeon, to be there kept only with Bread and Water. This Misery was not sufficient, but more than that; certain churlish *Sarazens* standing by, smote these two Brethren with their Fists and Staves.

After *Ferragus* had committed them, he went into his Palace, and called for his Sister *Clerimond*; when she came before him she could not forbear Tears, which made him say unto her: 'Sister, leave weeping, for I swear by *Mahomer*, you have too long doated upon the Brazen Head, as plainly appeareth, in that you make your Choice with one of a contrary Religion: But change your Mind, for it is a Shame that you should take him to Husband, who hath been the Overthrow of our Brother the *Green Knight*; next, a Christian whom our Laws abhor: Forbear, I say therefore, be ruled by my Direction, and I will raise your Fortune, by matching you to the puissant King *Trompart*. Forget, I say, the two *Frenchmen*, for shortly thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the Head.' Brother, (quoth *Clerimond*) it behoveth me to obey you; for I plainly see I must let go the Thing I cannot have; for where Force constraineth, Fear hath little Power, and Necessity often prevails. These Discourses finished, *Ferragus* departed with his Queen and other Attendants, and entering the great Hall, with much Honour and Reverence, they received the Lady *Clerimond*: The Queen saying thus unto her: 'Sister, welcome, for I have long desired to have a Sight of you.' Lady, (quoth *Clerimond*) I give you a thousand Thanks, but know this, that I am right heavy and sad, for two Christian Knights that are come here under Colour of Friendship and Love, brought

brought over by my Brother's fair Promises, and now are thrown into a Dungeon, and threatened with Death. This, Sister, even this, wounds my Soul, and splitteth my Heart asunder. 'Alas! Sister, pity me, for one of these Knights should have been my Husband: amongst all Men living, he is the comeliest, most valiant and hardy Knight that liveth upon the Face of the Earth. Again, dear Sister, by Force of Arms he hath conquered his Foe and won my Love; wherefore, Lady, pity my distressed State, and let me see that Christian Lady, which you have so long kept within this Castle.' Sister, (said the Queen) I will gladly consent to your Desire herein; and so bringing them together, the Lady *Bellifant* said thus unto her: 'Lady, what is your Will with me? Speak on, for I shall gladly hear any Thing you have to say.' Then thus, I bring you joyful Tidings, yet the End of my Tale will be as sorrowful as the Beginning is joyful. 'Know this, that I am not ignorant of thy Estate and Dignity; for you are Sister to King *Pepin* of France, and Wife unto the Emperor of Greece, who wrongfully banished you his Country; soon after your Exile, you were in Travail, delivered of two fair Sons in a Forest, one of which was taken from you by a Bear, and the other you lost you know not how. All this is true, my Lady, your Children are both alive, and I can tell you where to find them. At these Words *Bellifant* fell into a Swoon for Joy: *Clerimond* related the whole Story, how *Ferragus* her Brother, by Subtilty and Treason had put them into a Dungeon. *Bellifant*, hearing her two Children were imprisoned by *Ferragus*, made great Lamentation, insomuch, that *Ferragus*' Wife entered the Hall, to know the Cause of their mournful Clamours; after *Clerimond* had told the Queen from Point to Point, the Queen said: 'Be appeased, and dissemble the Cause from the King, for if he has any Knowledge thereof, it will rather make him worse, than better effected either to them or you.'

C H A P. XXIV.

How Pacolet the Dwarf, comforted the two Ladies.

AS these three Ladies were conferring about this Matter, into the Chamber came *Pacolet* the Dwarf, who was now come from his wooden Horse. When *Clerimond* saw him, she wept bitterly, and said, 'Alas! *Pacolet*, what Injury have I done unto thee, that thou should'st thus rob me of all my Joys at once? for I am well assured, that thou mightest have given me Warning of all these Miseries.' Lady, (quoth *Pacolet*) be not so highly displeased at me, for I protest I am ignorant of all that hath betided

you; but seeing you have begun these heavy Complaints, I swear my Art shall utterly forsake me but I will find a Remedy for you, to avenge yourself; and to that purpose, I here vow all my Service unto you and *Valentine* while Life doth last. Friend, (quoth the Lady *Bellifant*) if thou canst but free my two Children out of Prison, I shall acknowledge myself highly indebted to thee, and I will recompence thy Labours every Way. Lady, (quoth *Pacolet*) take no more Care, but comfort yourself, and e'er long you shall well perceive my crafty Work to take such Effect, that you shall have Cause to remember me while you have a Day to live.

C H A P. XXV.

How by Art Pacolet set free from the Prison of Ferragus, Valentine and Orson, and conducted them out of his Confines, with their Mother and the fair Lady Clerimond.

IT chanced that one Day *Ferragus* made a great Feast for all his Nobles, which Day they past in such Revelling and Mirth, that the Night growing late, they all betook themselves to Rest. Being at Rest, *Pacolet* was still watchful to give the Ladies Content, and coming to a great Tower, whose Gates were brass, by his Enchantment they flew open, and he entered therein. Anon, he came to the Prison where the Lady *Bellifant*'s two Sons lay bound; as soon as he came to the Door, the Locks broke and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark Dungeon, and hearing the Door open, were greatly surprized, for they looked for nothing but present Death: At last *Valentine* began to weep, but *Orson* said unto him: 'Take Courage, Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for Death, and since it is so, he that first entereth here to lay Hands on me shall dearly pay for his Adventure.' With that he laid Hold on a great Iron Bar that lay thereby; but at last *Pacolet* spoke unto them, saying; 'Lords, fear not, for I am come to set you free from this Dungeon, therefore make no Noise, but follow me, and before To-morrow's Sun I will bring you both unto your Mother. *Valentine* at this Speech rejoiced greatly; but *Orson* beholding him with an austere Look, would not give any Credit to his Words. *Pacolet* at the fierce Look of *Orson*, was much astonished, insomuch that he drew back, but by the Words of *Valentine* he was much comforted, and *Orson*'s Fury abated.

After this, *Pacolet* led them to the Chamber where the two sorrowful Ladies sat in mournful Tears; when he came to the Door of the Chamber, it was fast lock'd, but he easily open'd it. After they entred in, *Pacolet* so wrought with his Charms, that all that

was thereabout fell into a heavy and deep Sleep, and knew nothing of their Coming. Being in the Chamber where the Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, who suddenly fell into a Swoon, speaking unto them never a Word: But the Lady *Clerimond* said thus unto *Valentine*: 'Alas! fair Knight, this is the Mother that bore you, and for the Love and Joy of you hath fallen into this Extasy.' Then *Valentine* embraced her, and took her up in his Arms, and *Orson* clasped her about the Middle: saying unto her: 'Sweet Mother, speak unto me; and then he kissed her tender Lips; but all this while she spoke never a Word; at last they all three fell flat to the Earth in a Swoon, and there lay panting for Breath a long Time, while the fair Lady *Clerimond* stood over them, bewailing this strange Accident: At last coming to themselves again, their Mother said unto them weeping: 'Alas! my Children, for your Sakes have I suffered more Pain and Anguish than ever poor Woman was able to undergo, and you are the only Cause of these my dolorous Passions; but since the Gods have so ordained that I may once see you before my Death, all my Grief is become no more a Burthen unto me: but tell me how you have been preserved ever since your Birth, and in what Country, and with whom you have remained? for it would rejoice me to hear an Account thereof.' At last having ended her Words, *Valentine* began the mournful Story of all their Miseries, even to that Hour. *Valentine* having finished his sad Tale, by which the Empress *Bellifant* clearly knew that they were both her natural Children, bewailing with more Tears than before, she was likely again to have fallen into a Swoon, but *Pacolet* prevented her, who at that Instant in the Chamber said unto her: 'Lady, leave these Lamentations, and let us think how we may depart from *Portugal*, and so rid us of the Subjection of *Ferragus*.' Alas! (said *Clerimond*) my Love, remember the Oath you made unto me to make me your Wife. Dear Lady, (quoth *Valentine*) what I have promised I will perform, but at this present, the Love I owe unto my Mother toucheth me to the Heart.

These Words of *Valentine* being ended, *Orson* said unto *Pacolet*, Go open me the Door of *Ferragus*, and with these Hands I shall work his Downfall: *Pacolet* answered, 'Come along with me, and I shall gladly open it to fulfil your Desire.' But know this, (said *Clerimond*) if you murder him, you shall lose the Love of my Brother the *Green Knight*, who may divers and sundry Ways harm us. Quoth *Valentine*, you say Truth, and I agree unto this your wife and discreet Motion; for I would not have you guilty of such a

Crime as the Death of him, tho' I should gain all the World.

At this very Hour they departed the City, and *Pacolet* opened the Gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Sea-ports where he had appointed for them a Ship ready rigged, and having a fair Wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of *Clerimond*, whither being come, they refreshed themselves with Pleasure.

C H A P. XXVI.

How Valentine and Orson escaped from the Castle of Ferragus, and sailed with the two Ladies into Aquitain.

Valentine being come, and safely arrived at the Castle of *Clerimond*, could not content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of *Ferragus*, fearing lest he would follow them, and put them into fresh Dangers. Therefore to prevent all Occasions of further Mischief, he got himself down into one of the Ports, causing the Mariners there present to victual their Ship afresh: and also to provide a good Store of Ammunition, to be in Readiness upon all Occasions. Having thus done, he returned again into the Castle without any Suspicion: Being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother *Bellifant*, and the Lady *Clerimond*; saying, that he would suddenly depart from *Greece*, towards *Constantinople*, to his Father the Emperor, who, without any just Cause, had banished his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with *Orson* and *Pacolet*.

The next Day they took Shipping, and went on their Voyage; and at the Break of Day, the Jailor (as usual) went to the Tower to visit the Prisoners, and to bring them their Allowance of Bread and Water. Coming unto the Gates he found them all open, and the Prisoners gone; he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him: 'Dread King, Mercy, for this Night have I lost the two Christian Knights that you delivered to Prison.' He had no sooner done speaking, but another Messenger appeared and said, 'O King! greater Mischief than this has likewise happened this Night; for the Christian Woman whom you have kept these many Years, is this Night escaped away, and hath carried along with her your Sister *Clerimond*.' *Ferragus* hearing these harsh Tidings, all enraged, began to tear his Hair so, that he was like a Madman amongst his Barons, and suddenly caused them to be armed, and ordered them to pursue and follow them; so betaking himself to his Club, issued out the foremost.

He was a mighty Man, and was in Stature about thirteen Foot in Height. Being out of Town, and calling

calling his Men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none pass he met with, but demanded Tidings of them, yet he could not hear of them; for *Pacolet*, by his Art, was too subtle for *Ferragus*. At last, being tired with Pursuit, he swore he would besiege the Castle of *Clerimond*; for he thought assuredly to find them there, but all in vain, for they were departed before his Coming. Thus enraged, he swore by *Mabomet*, that he would either find *Clerimond* and all her Company, or else he would shake all *Christendom*, and so departed the Castle.

C H A P. XXVII.

How King Ferragus assembled all his Men of War, to take Revenge upon Valentine and his Sister Clerimond; and how he followed them into Aquitain.

WHEN *Ferragus* had long laboured, and could hear no Tidings of the Christians, and his Sister *Clerimond*, he was grieved, and in his Fury sent for all his Men of War, on every Side, presently to assemble themselves to go to Sea, and follow *Valentine*, and try if they could find him, and bring him again: But when they had spent many Days and effected nothing, they returned every Man to his Home, and rested from their fruitless Toil. Whilst *Ferragus* was thus scouring the flowing Seas, *Valentine* and *Orson* were entered the City of *Aquitain*: Being there they assembled their Estate, and as private Persons lodged in the House of a Burgher of the Town. *Valentine* would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke *Savary*, but *Orson* would not agree to that, for having a greater Reach of Policy, said unto him: 'Brother, I find by small Experience, that Women are inconstant, therefore hearken to my Advice, let us first see and try how the Lady *Fezon* stands affected towards me, and herein we shall know her Constancy.' 'Brother, (quoth *Valentine*) I shall willingly agree.' Then *Orson* took on him the Habit of a Knight Errant, and entered the great Hall, taking *Pacolet* the Dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he saluted him with Reverence. The Duke observing well his Behaviour, took him to be *Orson* that thus demeaned himself; but after finding by his Speech he was like to be deceived, said, 'Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who will gladly adventure to serve you in any Manner you will employ me.' 'Knight, (quoth the Duke) I accept of your proffer'd Service, and will give you Salary enough to content you, in so much that if you will not depart my Service before I give Leave, I shall give you such Riches, that all the Generations you came from could not raise.'

dissembled?

'Thanks great Duke, (quoth *Orson*) for your liberal Heart, and I here vow e'er I depart, to deserve your Love and Liberality.'

Hereupon the Duke requested him to visit his Court, and in lieu of his good Will, he allowed him present Pay 150*l.* making him withal a Companion for the Court. *Orson* thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himself worthy of the same, and ever so carried himself at Table, that every Man delighted in his Company. Among the rest the fair Lady *Fezon* that was his sworn Wife, grew wondrous heavy and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not it was *Orson* whom she had beheld; and thus Dinner-time passed. Dinner being done, *Orson* took his Leave for that Time, and returned to his Lodging, where his Mother and the Lady *Clerimond* had taken their Residence. *Orson* being come unto the Place where the Ladies lay, related the whole Passage between him and the Duke, which when the Ladies heard, they much rejoiced thereat; but this Joy lasted not long, for there came sudden News, that *Ferragus* had sent Messengers unto the Duke of *Aquitain*, to proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome News, presently provided both Men and Provision to resist so proud an Enemy. *Ferragus* according to his Purpose, suddenly arrived before *Aquitain*, even in the very same Place where his Brother the *Green Knight* had pitched his Pavilion, when that *Orson* became his Vanquisher; by this Means much Hurt redounded to the Provinces thereabout, and at the same time the *Sarazens* Army lay in Readiness, thinking by this, their long and tedious Continuance, to subdue and over-run the whole Country before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this their Imagination, (mark what followeth) the worthy Duke of *Aquitain* being of a magnanimous Courage, assembled all his Men of War, and being thus in Readiness, he suddenly issued out of the Town, resolving to raise the Siege. Among the rest, *Valentine* and *Orson* made their Appearance, being also accompanied with little *Pacolet*; but these three were not known unto any one at that Time; where we will now leave them for a while, and hear what followeth.

C H A P. XXVIII.

How the Duke of Aquitain was taken Prisoner in the Battle against Ferragus; and how Orson set him free by the Help of Pacolet.

THE Duke of *Aquitain* calling to Mind the huge Army of the *Sarazens* that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present Battle the next Morning; so calling up all his Forces, and

and placing them in Readiness, there happened a bloody Battle before the City of *Aquitain*, and many a brave Leader in both Parties lost their Lives. The Giant *Ferragus* was among the thickest, gathering as near as he could unto his Standard-bearer. The chief Men slain in this battle were six valiant Knights, that is to say, *Boudumain*, *Bondoy*, *William*, *Gale-ram*, *Anthony* the Marshal, and *Gloriam* the Hardy: All near about the Duk of *Aquitain*; and they who had the chief Command through his Camp. This happening, the Christians were forced to fall back, whereby the Duke himself was begirt with his Enemies, so that none could come to Succour him; yet in the midst of these Dangers he bore himself most valiant, and still cried *Aquitain, Aquitain*, my noble Hearts fight on for *Aquitain*; but in the End, all little availed, for *Ferragus* having once gotten a Sight of him, came near, and at last took him Prisoner, and led him to his Pavillion: *Ferragus* having thus secured the Duke, came up again to the Battle, which struck such Amazement unto the Hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the Field, especially because they had lost the Duke their Lord and Master. *Valentine* and *Orson* seeing them thus waver, came unto them with all the Speed they could, and cried out with a loud Voice; 'Valiant Knights and Men of *Aquitain*, shew yourselves Men, run not away in time of Extremity, for if you do, great will be your Reproach: Be Hardy and Courageous; once again let us try the Fortune of the Day.'

These two Knights having done speaking, the People began to gather up their scattered Forces, and turn them once more on the *Sarazens*, with a double Courage. By this Time Tidings were brought into the City that the Duke was taken Prisoner, at which ill News the Lady *Fezon* lamented more than all the rest; saying with a heavy Heart, and shedding Tears, Alas my Father! Now is your Life in Hazard, for from these *Sarazens* there is no Hope of any Mercy. Farewel, sweet Father, I shall never see you again, but shall be here left like a dejected Orphan. Alas! *Orson* my Love, thy long and tedious Stay abroad doth much distemper me, for if you were here present, there would be some Hope to gain my Father's Freedom.

Valentine was all this while among the thickest, hewing forth his Way with his Sword. *Orson* on the other Side was not idle, for he swore he would free the Duke from Captivity, or leave his Body among the Dead. *Pacolet* the Dwarf promised *Orson* Assistance in Need: And thus all busied and nigh wearied, *Orson* put Spurs to his Horse, and ran violently thro' the Battle, and escaped. *Orson* and *Pacolet* being

past all Danger, cast away their own Shields, and hanging about their Necks the Shields of the *Sarazens*, set forth with the Image of *Mahomet*, and by this Subtilty they passed thro' the Camp of the Pagans, for *Pacolet* could speak their Language right well. Now are they come into the Pavillion of *Ferragus*, where the Duke lay in Bands, thinking to release him; but *Pacolet* espying their Number to be too mighty for them, suddenly cast them all, by his Charms, into a dead Sleep; being made fast, he came unto the Duke, and said unto him; 'Come with us presently, mount this Horse, for we are come to set you free from *Ferragus*: If you doubt who I am, know, I am the Knight which in your Hall demanded Wages of you, and you allowed me liberally. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the Pagans here assembl'd, for I will be your Guide thro' the wicked Rout.' 'Knight (quoth the Duke) you are a welcome Man in this distressed Condition, therefore, for your dangerous Enterprize, in working my Deliverance, I shall give you my Daughter *Fezon* in Marriage; indeed I have given her not long since to a Knight, but he was wild and savage, and never had the Use of his Tongue; but by reason of his long Absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my Daughter Husbandless; but to be short, take her for this thy noble Act, and with her I freely give the half of my Dudedom.' Thanks (quoth the Knight) such a Gift as this is not to be refused; but let that pass, and let us make our Escape, that we may return unto our discomfited Forces. Having thus said, they all three took their Way back thro' the Camp of the Enemy without Disturbance. All this while was *Valentine* in the Army, wondering what was become of his Brother *Orson*, but found no Man could tell Tidings of him: then being wonderful heavy and sad, fearing very much he had been slain in the Conflict of the Battle.

Thus passed *Valentine* from Place to Place, to find out his Brother *Orson*, and with a resolute Mind rushed afresh into the Battle, and as a Man distracted, laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand against him: *Ferragus* seeing him so valiant, came up to close him, and having gotten him once in Chace, never left him till he had slain his Horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his Horse, *Ferragus* seiz'd on him as his Prisoner, causing him to be bound Hand and Foot, taking an Oath by *Mahomet*, that he should not escape from Death, tho' there were not a Man more to be had thro' the whole Land: but this Oath was broken, for as he was leading *Valentine* fast

fast bound along the Field, *Orson*, *Pacolet*, and the Duke of *Aquitain* set upon him; *Orson* crying out, 'Let him not escape us;' and therewithal put Spurs to his Horse, and ran so fiercely against *Ferragus*, that both he and *Valentine* his Prisoner fell to the Earth. The Giant *Ferragus* quickly regained his Feet, and left *Valentine*, who fearing, began to run away. *Orson* spying him, cried out, 'Brother, return again, and fear nothing;' hereupon *Valentine* was new mounted. When the Christians saw the Duke at Liberty, their Courage again encreased, their Forces redoubled, and with Joy of heart they cried out aloud, 'Long live the Duke of *Aquitain*.' This sudden Noise much amazed the *Sarazens*, in-somuch that *Ferragus* was glad to flee and raise the Siege. When the Men of *Aquitain* heard the Retreat, they marched again into the City. The Battle being thus ended, *Valentine* and *Pacolet* returned to their Lodging, but *Orson* went along with the Duke to his Palace, whither being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughters *Fezon*; being all assembled, he called *Orson* unto him, demanding his Name? 'Sir, said he, I am called *Grygory*.' Then said the Duke before them all, 'Lords, I am above all Men living most oblig'd to this Knight for my Life and Liberty. And as for you my Daughter *Fezon*, it is my Pleasure, that above all Men, you accept this Knight for your Husband: Daughter, you have good Cause to Love him well, for by him I am made a living Father unto you.'

The Nobles there assembled agreed willingly thereunto, affirming that she could do no less than submit to her Father's Will, and the rather, considering the Dangers that by him had been prevented: *Orson* hearing all this, concealed himself till he had further essayed the Constancy of the fair Lady *Fezon*, acquainting his Brother *Valentine* as he had Purposed to do, as will appear in the next Chapter.

C H A P. XXIX.

How Orson tried the Constancy of the Lady Fezon, before he Married her.

ORSON having a Desire to try the Constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, at last applied thus unto the Duke: 'Sir, for the Honour you have vouchsafed me, I shall be ever thankful for the same; but for your Daughter, it would be most requisite I should see how she stands affected towards me; and likewise it is reasonable she should make Choice of such a Man as is of equal Birth with hers; and if it Please you, let her answer for herself.' With these Words he entered the Chamber of the fair Lady *Fezon*, and sitting down by her, he took her by the

Hand, and said unto her: 'Lady, your Beauty hath so engaged my Heart, that without your Favour and Love I am an unfortunate Man: Your Father is willing I should enjoy you if you please, then might I justly boast, that I have won the fairest Lady living, and will prove a constant Knight whilst I have Breath: if you consent to this, let us embrace each other.' Knight, quoth she, you ought to forbear, for all your Labour is lost: It is true I love all Knights, yea all good Men too, in the Rule of Honour; but him whom I mean to make my Husband will I never change, nor yet forget. Why? but fair Lady (quoth *Orson*) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you ought to please you. Sir, said she, it is reason I obey my Father, but if so be, that my Father will constrain me to break my Faith, and forsake him that vanquished the *Green Knight*, I would rather leave my Father, than once offer to break my Faith. 'Lady (quoth *Orson*) I wonder how you can set your Affections on such a Man, for he is of a wild Nature and Disposition; besides, as it is reported, is dumb, and cannot speak a Word.' 'True (quoth the Lady) yet Love learneth me to love him with a faithful Affection, to whom my Faith is already fixed; therefore stay your Suit, for I will never alter nor change my Mind from him.'

Orson hereat grew wondrous joyful to hear the wise Answer of *Fezon*, and took his Leave of her, and came again to the Duke; saying, 'Great Duke, I am returned from your Daughter, for she hath given me a Denial, saying, that she will never have any other Husband than he that conquered the *Green Knight*.' Quoth the Duke, 'Care not for her Denial, for she shall not rule her own Will. But be you a little patient this Day, and I will talk with her myself.' 'Thanks, mighty Duke, quoth he, I am much obliged to you;' and so he left the Court, and came to the Lodging of his Brother *Valentine*, to whom he related the whole Matter of his Proceedings with the Lady *Fezon*. 'Brother, said *Valentine*, you now find her faithful; let us go together to the Palace, for I am assured that the Duke will give me good Entertainment.' 'Sir, said *Orson*, do as you please.' *Valentine* clothed himself in rich Apparel, and *Orson* put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entered into *Aquitain*; and thus accompanied with *Pacolet*, they went towards the Palace; and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his Daughter in the Presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: 'Daughter, what moveth you to neglect my Command thus, in rejecting the Knight of whose Love I have made sufficient

ent Trial, for he hath saved my Life?' Father, quoth the Maiden, I Pray you solicit me no farther in this Matter, seeing you know assuredly that I have given my Promise to him that vanquished the *Green Knight*. What greater Shame can there be than to break my Promise which I have made already? If by you I am constrained, the Danger be upon you only, let me be Innocent.' As they were thus discourfing, the Duke efpying *Valentine* and *Orson* coming towards him, embraced, and honourably entertained them. *Orson* having faluted the Duke, paffed towards the Lady *Fexon*, who received him with a fmiling Countenance, and faid thus unto him: 'You are welcome above all others: your long Abfence hath greatly grieved me; and had you not come as you did, my Father had beftowed me upon another Knight.' 'Love (quoth *Orson*) I have learned to fpeak fince I was with you laft, and am the very fame Man that Yefterday courted you in your Chamber.' All which pleased the Lady exceedingly; then *Orson* went into a Chamber, and put on rich Apparel: Being thus attired, he entered the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming, embraced him kindly, and faid; 'Son, pardon my Rafhnefs in that I would have given away thy Love to another, for I was fully perfuaded that thou wouldeft never have returned.' 'Sir (quoth *Orson*) I forgive you.' Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had fpent their Time fince their Departure? *Orson* told them their whole Progreff, and what Dangers they had efaped, and withal, how they two were the Sons of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and *Bellifant* to be Sifter to King *Pepin of France*, whom they had lately found in *Portugal*. The Duke hearing that their Defcent was of Royal Blood, was right glad thereat; and faid, 'Knights, you are worthy of all Honour, by reafon of your Birth; but I am forry your Father the Emperor, and your Uncle King *Pepin* are fo hardly befieged by the *Sarazens* that unlefs speedy Aid be fent to them, they will be forced to yield themfelves.' *Valentine* giving good Ear unto this Relation, grew exceeding fad; but *Pacolet* at laft foon put him out of his Dumps, and faid, 'Leave off your grieving, for e'er To-morrow Night I fhall fend you to *Constantinople*.' 'But (quoth *Valentine*) it muft be by the Devil's Means.' 'Sir, faid *Pacolet*, mount you upon my Wooden Horfe, and try the Event of what will follow.' *Valentine* answered, 'that I will do, for I defire nothing fo much as the Sight of my Father, whom I never faw.' *Valentine* on the Morrow prepared to depart; but before his Departure, the Duke married his Daughter unto *Orson*.

in the Prefence of the Lady *Bellifant*, and the Lady *Clerimond*, with the Consent of his Nobles, which were at the Wedding, and there were great Triumphs. In this Affembly there was a Spy, who obferved all their Proceedings, and gave intelligence thereof unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* had received thefe Tidings, he vowed by *Mahomet* to be revenged on them all, but efpecially on *Pacolet*, for ftealing away his Sifter *Clerimond*, whom he fo much loved, but ranked her now among the Chriftians.

C H A P. XXX.

How Ferragus the Giant ftrengthened his Forces, by the Aid of King Trompart and the Enchanter Adrimain.

F*erragus* being out of Hope to get Revenge on the two Knights and his Sifter *Clerimond*, called unto him a Messenger, and delivered unto him divers Letters of State; efpecially one of 'em was to King *Trompart*, of whom he defired Aid againft his Enemies; all which, if he could fpeedily accomplifh, he would give unto him for Wife his Sifter *Clerimond*. At the Farewel of his Letter, he defired him to bring along with him the Enchanter *Adrimain*. Here leave we the Giant, and return to *Valentine*, who by this time is taking leave for *Constantinople*. But in the End, faid thus unto the Duke, and *Orson* his Brother, 'Lords, with you I leave my lovely *Clerimond*.' *Valentine* (quoth the Duke) take you no Thought for her, for I fhall have a Fatherly Eye over her, as well as I have over my Daughter *Fexon*.'

Valentine having taken Leave, came to *Clerimond*, who being unwilling to part with him, wept bitterly, but he was forced to leave her; and turning him to his Brother *Orson*, who faid thus: 'Brother, remember me to my Father the Emperor, and to my Uncle King *Pepin*, and tell them e'er long I will vifit them.' 'Brother (quoth *Valentine*) I fhall remember you;' and fo departed. *Orson* ftill remained in the Palace, but *Valentine* had a Duty yet more to do; namely, to take Leave of his Mother; but when fhe faw him, fhe clafped him round with her Arms, but was not able to fpeak; *Valentine* perceiving her natural Affection, comforted her in the beft Manner he could, but all was in vain.

C H A P. XXXI.

Of the pitifull Tale the Empreſs made to Valentine her Son, before he departed unto Constantinople; and what Speeches paſſed between him, his Father and his Uncle.

V*alentine* being overcome with the Lamentations of his Mother, at laft faid thus unto her: 'O Mother, leave off, be not fo careful of me, for

if I escape Danger, I shall gladly see you here again; in the mean time take care of my fair *Clerimond*, and let her be assured of my Loyalty towards her.' 'Alas, my Son! now will it come to Light that I have been basely abused, and falsely banished from my Husband's Bed and Country: but yet do thus much for me, to commend me to the Emperor, and also to my Brother King *Pepin*, and say unto them in my Behalf, that I am an Innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be such a Man breathing, that will but once open his mouth contrary, fight thou for me, and justly maintain my unspotted Chastity.' 'Mother, quoth *Valentine*, all this and more will I perform, and e'er many Months have run their Course, I shall cause my Father to receive you again, and ask your Pardon for his rash Proceedings.' Now he takes his Farewel of his dear Mother, with this Charge, that as soon as they were arrived, he would send *Pacolet* to bring Tidings of all that had happened.

Then he took his Way to the Lodging of *Pacolet*, whither being come, *Pacolet* made ready his Wooden Horse, and took *Valentine* behind him, turning the Pin the same Way he would take, and suddenly they were mounted in the Air, so swiftly, that e'er the Morrow at Noon, they were in Sight of *Constantinople*. *Valentine* was wondrous joyful that he was so near the Place he so much desired to see, and by the Help of *Pacolet* the Enchanter, came that Night to the great Hall, where the Emperor, accompanied with King *Pepin*, sat at Supper. *Valentine* being come into such an unknown Presence, grew very bashful, but the *Green Knight* sitting at the Table with the Emperor and King *Pepin*, spied *Valentine*, and knew him, so had King *Pepin* knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperor: 'Great Emperor, behold here is one of our own Blood, a valiant Knight, and your natural Son.' The Emperor hearing this, was much amazed, and rising from the Table made towards him and kissed him: The *Green Knight* was the next that took him in his Arms and embraced him; then King *Pepin*, and the Emperor his Father a second time, who was greatly ashamed at his foul Fact in banishing his unspotted and guiltless Wife,

It chanced likewise, that there was present her old Servant *Blandiman*, who had Knowledge of *Pacolet*, ever since he saw him in *Portugal*, who went unto him, and demanded how it fared with his old Mistress the Lady *Bellissant*? *Pacolet* satisfied him in all his Demands, so that exceeding Joy and Gladness was heard about the City for the Life of *Valentine*; and the People came from all Parts to behold the Em-

peror's Son. The valiant Knight *Valentine* seeing such a continued Recourse of all the Estates gathering about him, said unto them; 'Lords, Knights and Barons here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my Person, I cannot yield unto you any Recompence but Thanks, and especially unto my Uncle King *Pepin*, who hath ever fostered me, even from my Cradle; and had it not been for him I had perished, by reason of a sharp Edict published by my Father, who by the false Suggestions of a dead Traitor, banished my Mother from his Bed and Country. Wherefore, to clear her Innocence, I, as her natural Son, offer my Body in Combat against any false Traitor whatsoever.'

C H A P. XXXII.

How Valentine and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners in the Battle of Constantinople, by the Soldan Moradin and his Men.

WHEN the Emperor perceived his Son to be so much moved for the Dishonour which was done unto his Mother the Empress, he wept for very Grief of Heart, and said thus unto him: 'Alas, Knight! I have no Doubt of thee to be my Son, neither of thy Manhood, in offering to revenge her Wrongs upon the Traitor that accused her, but he is fallen already by the Sword of a Merchant, and in the Presence of thy Uncle King *Pepin*, myself and others of high Estate. At his Death he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time, have I sent divers Messages into all Nations, to hear Tidings what has become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired Wish: Therefore I pray thee (if thou canst) tell me some glad Tidings of her.' 'Father (quoth *Valentine*) I know somewhat; for Yesternight, I both saw and spoke with her in *Aquitain*;' telling him besides, that *Pacolet* the Enchanter had suddenly brought him thither by Art rather than good Speed. The Emperor hearing such glad Tidings from his Son, caused great Triumphs throughout the City of *Constantinople*. When the *Sarazens* heard such Shouts and Revelings within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himself in Readiness. The Soldan had round begirt *Constantinople*, starving all the Inhabitants, most lamentable to behold. At last, these Tidings came to the Ears of *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, who arming themselves, came into the City, and said, 'Lords, you well perceive the Extremity in which we now are; be courageous and stand to it, and there is Hopes of Recovery; wherefore follow my Counsel, issue forth some Number of you to forage for Victuals, whilst I accompanied with two thousand Men, set upon the *Sarazens*.' They did as he

he advised them, and in a short time they behaved themselves so valiantly, that they gained from the Enemy three thousand Chariots laden with all Sorts of Victuals. Having thus seized the Victuals, they were conducting the same into the City, but the Soldan fore grieved at his Losses, got between the City and them, thinking to have barred them from Entrance; but King *Pepin* spying their Policy, and how they had stopped up the Passage, couched his Spear, and ran upon the Soldan so violently, that he threw the proud Pagan to the Earth; then pulling out his Sword at one *Achilon*, a very valiant Commander, with such Fury, that he struck him out of his Saddle. *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* perceiving the great Courage of King *Pepin*, and what Fortune he had in the Field, immediately entered fresh into the Battle, and with a resolute Courage, even in the Presence of the Soldan hewed down the chief Standard of the *Sarazens*. The Standard being overthrown, *Valentine* addressed himself against the Soldan, and with his Spear so encountered him, and foisted him so that he could scarcely fit his Horse. *Maraldus*, one of the chief Commanders was slain, and his Admiral taken Prisoner by the *Green Knight*, with other Exploits performed on both Sides. But mark what follows; these two Knights were so triumphant on their uncertain Victory, that they pressed the Enemy so far within Danger, that when they would return they could not, and consequently were taken Prisoners by the *Sarazens*, and brought before the Soldan. The Soldan having gotten them in Bands, insulting proudly over them, and with an Oath, he vowed by *Mahomet*, that they should never escape with Life; therefore gave present Command to raise a Gibbet before the City Walls, and presently in the Sight of all his Enemies to hang them up. Now were *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* in great Fear; but we will leave them a little, and return to those Christians that had gotten great Booty of Victuals, yet could not get into the City, by reason they were encountered by the *Sarazens* Army; in which Encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the End of that Day's engagement. At last, seeing what a desperate Case they stood in, with one Consent, issued forth Men, Women, Priests, Clerks, and all Degrees. When the Pagans saw their Multitudes, they were forced to retire into their Tents, and by that Means, the Christians obtained all their Prey of Victuals, and safely conveyed it into the City, altho' with the Loss of many a Life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the Loss of his warlike Men, especially for his Son *Valentine* and the

Green Knight; most heavy and sad also was the worthy King *Pepin*. *Pacolet* seeing these two Peers take the Matter so heavily, comforted them; saying in this Manner: 'Lords, leave off your Lamentations, for it shall fare better with *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* than you can imagine.' 'Friend, said the Emperor, if thy Words prove true, I will advance thy Estate.' 'Sir, said he, shortly you shall make Trial of my Love and Respect towards you.' So betook him to his Wooden Horse, and departed towards the Soldan's Host, and came thither just at the Instant that the Soldan came to judge *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* to Death; and how it was prevented you shall hear in the Chapter following.

C H A P. XXXIII.

How Pacolet by Enchantment delivered Valentine and the Green Knight from the Bondage of the Soldan: and how he cozened him when he had him upon his Horse, and instead of carrying him to Portugal, brought him to Constantinople, where he was hanged.

ALL being assembled as aforesaid, the Soldan began thus to speak; 'Lords, here I present before you, these that must combat the mighty Giant *Ferragus*, and that which most of you ought to take notice of is, that one of them hath forsaken his Religion, and for that Cause my Judgment is, that he be sent to *Ferragus*, and from him receive Punishment suitable to his Offence.' Nay, said the *Sarazens*, let us never do so, but let them both here suffer Death to morrow Morning.' 'Lords, quoth the Soldan, let it be so'. These Resolutions thus agreed upon, the Soldan entered his Pavillion, to Supper, where being set, *Pacolet* came and saluted him in the Name of *Mahomet*. Welcome *Pacolet*, quoth the Soldan, how fareth *Ferragus* my dear Friend? 'Sir, said *Pacolet*, right well, and by me sends joyful Tidings, if you please to hear them.' 'Right gladly, said the Soldan, I prithee begin.' Then *Pacolet* drew him aside, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and said: 'Sir, know this, I am lately come from *Portugal*, and sent by the fair Wife of *Ferragus*, whose Heart is on Fire with the Love she beareth to you; long hath she concealed her Affections, but has Power no longer to do so; therefore she hath disclosed that to me, which she durst not utter to any one but myself. Again *Ferragus* is in *Aquitain*, and that no Opportunity may be omitted, come along with me and stay no longer to expostulate; for upon my Horse will we suddenly arrive in *Portugal*, and bring you to the fair Lady's Sight.' 'Pacolet, thou hast more rejoiced my heart than all worldly Treasure can afford: True it

it is, she is the only Woman I ever aimed at, but never knew how to effect my Wishes.' The Soldan caused *Pacolet* to be highly feasted; so on the Morrow they went on their Journey; but mark what followed. *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* you must conceive were both in the Pavillion, and were right glad that they had got a sight of *Pacolet*, but durst not make any shew thereof: *Pacolet* on the other Side shewed himself a Flatterer to the Soldan, in eating, drinking, and revelling at the Soldan's Table; and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the Soldan, in hearing of all: 'Sir, how dare you venture your noble Person so near this *Green Knight*, without giving him his just Desert, for of all Men living he is the most Dangerous; first, for the Wrongs that he committed against his Brother *Ferragus*, bereaving him of *Clerimond*, and gave her in Marriage to a Christian Knight; next, he hath renounced *Mahomet*; these Things considered, it is fit he should die, were there no more Men living.' 'Friend (quoth the Soldan) to-morrow Morning they shall both be hang'd.' Then the Soldan commanded the Prisoners to be strongly guarded, upon Pain of Death, and so withdrawing him to his Chamber, left *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* under the Conduct of those that most desired their Death.

In the dead time of the Night came *Pacolet* unto *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, and first freed them of their Bands, and by Art so charmed all their Keepers (who slept securely) that he brought them past all Danger. Having thus set them at Liberty, about the Dawning of the Day he came to the Soldan's Tent, crying out so that he awaken'd him, and then *Pacolet* began to say thus unto him: 'Sir, little appeareth your Love unto the Wife of *Ferragus*, seeing for her sake you are loth to lose one Hour's Sleep.' Whereunto the Soldan replied, 'Thou hast done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a most fearful Dream, and thus it was; methought a Crow did bear me swiftly thro' the Air, and as she was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and struck me with his Bill, so hard, that the Blood issued out in Abundance; now this Dream makes me much to fear that *Ferragus* hath some Intelligence of my Desires, and designs to revenge himself upon me.' 'Away Sir, quoth *Pacolet*; with this childish Fear, will you therefore neglect the Love of such a beautiful Lady?' By *Mahomet*, quoth the Soldan, thou sayest Truth. And calling to his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this Charge: 'Sirrah, be secret, if my Uncle *Bryan* asks for me, tell him I am gone a little way to sport with *Pacolet*.' Then *Pacolet* took the Soldan behind him on his Wooden

Horse, and turning the Pin, the Horse rose up into the Air so swiftly, that in a little time they arrived at *Constantinople*, even in the Emperor's Palace. The Soldan perceiving *Pacolet*'s Horse to make a stay, said thus unto him: 'Friend, are we at our Journey's End?' 'Yea, quoth *Pacolet*, and fear nothing, for we are in *Portugal*, in the Castle of King *Ferragus*.' 'By *Mahomet*, quoth the Soldan, the Devil hath borne us here very quickly.' 'Well, said *Pacolet*, enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean time I will haste into the Chamber of the Lady, and presently cause you to be brought unto her bed.' 'Do so, quoth the Soldan, for I am even ravished with Joy, and shall think each Minute an Hour till I have my Desire.'

Now sitteth the Soldan in the Hall, waiting the coming of *Pacolet*, while he, in the mean time maketh towards the Chamber where the Emperor lay; being come to the Door, he gave a great Blow against it, insomuch that the Chamberlain ask'd, who it was that presumed to disturb the Emperor's Rest? 'Friend, quoth *Pacolet*, fear not, for I am *Pacolet*, newly come from the Soldan's Host, where I have set at Liberty both *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, who were condemn'd to die: Besides, say unto the Emperor, that I have brought along with me the Soldan himself; therefore, he may now be revenged on him in full, for he hath most justly deserved Death.' The Chamberlain told the Emperor all these Tidings, and also King *Pepin*: So arming themselves, they came into the great Hall where the Soldan sat. The Soldan perceiving himself betrayed, cried out with a loud Voice: 'Thou false *Pacolet*! Traitor to my Person, I vow to be revenged upon thee for thy disloyal Practice towards me; and therewithal drew his Sword, and like a Madman ran up and down the Hall, striking the very Stones so fiercely, that he made Fire fly from the senseless Walls. As he was in this mad fit, the Attendants entered towards him with Torches. The Soldan spying them, defended himself so fiercely, that he slew the Squire that attended on King *Pepin*. This Act of his fired the Courage of the King that he made a Blow at him and felled him to the Earth. Being fallen, they bound him Hand and Foot; and in the Morning came *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, who finding the Soldan there in Bands, were very joyful.

The Emperor and the King seeing *Valentine*, were joyful for his Deliverance, and gave great Thanks to *Pacolet* for his Care over his Son, and withal said, 'Pacolet, one Strain more of thy Horse must I demand.' 'You shall, Sir, quoth *Pacolet*, and if you will get behind

behind me I shall instantly transport you into Hell. But, Lords, let that pass, and return to the Death of the Soldan, for if he escape your Hands at this time, a World of Miseries will ensue.' So that very Hour they proceeded to Judgment, and commanded him to be hanged on the greatest Tower of the Palace, even in the very Sight of all his Pagan Host.

This done the Pagans stood as Men confounded, and amazed to see him there hanging, and wondered how he came within the City; but at last Bryan his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by the Traitot *Pacolet*. After they had long lamented the Death of the Soldan, they assembled themselves in Council, and in his stead chose his Uncle Bryan Soldan. After all these Things done, *Pacolet* took his Leave of the Emperor, and returned into *Aquitain*, to comfort the Lady *Clerimond* as he promised; but before his Departure, *Valentine* came unto him and said, '*Pacolet*, at your coming into *Aquitain*, salute my Mother *Bellissant*, and my loving Lady *Clerimond*, my Brother *Orson*, and the good Duke of *Aquitain*, with the rest of his Nobles; and above all the rest deliver this to my Mother, by which she shall understand our whole Proceedings here.' Sir, said *Pacolet*, all this I shall willingly perform. So taking his Horse, he leapt upon him, & flew up in the air as swift as Smoak.

The next Morning *Pacolet* was at his Journey's End, and finding the Duke of *Aquitain*, the Empress *Bellissant*, *Orson*, and *Clerimond*, all in Safety, saluted them, and delivered them Letters, which said: Lady, your Son *Valentine* greeteth you well, shewing you that the Emperor, to revenge your Banishment, had him hanged who was the Cause thereof; wherefore he promiseth, that as soon as he can free his Country from the *Sarazens*, to come himself in Person, and then forthwith bring with him the *Green Knight*, whom *Orson* had vanquished. The Lady hearing these joyful Tidings, suddenly fell into a Swoon; but *Orson* perceiving it, snatched her up in his Arms, and being somewhat come to herself, she said; My Child, I am justly overcome with Joy, in that I understand I am proved innocent of such abominable Crimes, as I was falsely accused of; but I long to see the Emperor, whom if I might but once again behold, I should not desire longer to live, for I am well revenged, and my Accuser hath justly suffered a most shameful Death for his Treachery.

C H A P. XXXIV.

How King Trompart came before Aquitain, to succour Ferragus, and brought with him Adrimain the Enchanter, who betrayed Pacolet; and how the King of India caused King Trompart's Head to be

struck off. How he would have married Clerimond; and how Pacolet was revenged on Adrimain, in the Shape of a Woman.

Pacolet arrived in *Aquitain*, at the same time that King Trompart came thither to aid Ferragus, against the Christians, at whose coming Ferragus began thus to salute him: Famous King, of your coming I am glad, hoping by your Assistance to bring back my Sister *Clerimond*, and to be revenged on all those that have detained her. Ferragus, said King Trompart, doubt nothing, for I have brought with me *Adrimain* the Enchanter, whose Skill shall confound *Pacolet* in his Art. Thanks great King, I am much bound to you for your Love, and if he can but get *Pacolet* into my Hands, I shall reward him liberally. Sir, quoth *Adrimain*, put your Trust in me; and so taking his leave, betook him to his Magic Art. Being provided with all Things, among the rest, he loaded himself with Victuals, and took his Way towards *Aquitain*; coming thither he craved Entrance at the Gates to sell his Victuals, which was readily granted. After he had sold all, he went into the Palace, where he met *Pacolet*, whom he knew well. *Adrimain*, quoth *Pacolet*, you are welcome, from whence came you, and what is your Errand? (says *Adrimain*) You know that long I have served King Trompart; yet by Fate I am fallen into a great Mischance, for one in his Court having smitten me, because I would not teach him the principles of my Art, I drew forth my Knife and killed him: Now fearing Death, I have left the Court, and for this Cause fled to you for Succour, and I will prove unto you a faithful Servant; so be pleased to accept of me. *Adrimain*, said *Pacolet*, I am content to let it be so, make thee good Cheer and be merry. As they were thus at their Cups, *Adrimain* saw the fair Lady *Clerimond* pass thro' the Hall, who presently demanded what Lady she was? She, said *Pacolet*, is the Sister of Ferragus, who must be married to a right valiant Knight. Whilst they were thus in Conference, *Orson* came unto them, and said, Gentlemen, I could gladly wish that one of your Art would shew somewhat to delight the Assembly.

At these Words *Adrimain* drew a Cup above a Pillar, in such wise, that thro' the Palace (seemingly to all the Company) ran a River furnished with all Sorts of Fish, little and great. When the beholders saw the Waters come up so strongly against them, they were afraid of being drowned. *Pacolet* beholding their Fear, among the rest he began a Song, and in that Song a Charm, that it seemed to all the Beholders, that a Hart ran thro' the River overturning all

all things that stood in his Way. After this Hart ran Hunters with their Hounds. This made many of the Beholders leap after, thinking to have taken the Hart, but *Pacolet* by his Art made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This Sport, quoth *Orson*, was very well performed; and so breaking up, *Pacolet* led *Adrimain* to his Chamber to be with him, but it proved fatal; for towards Midnight *Adrimain* so enchanted all within the Court, and with them *Pacolet*, that he had Time to work all he desired. Afterwards he went to the Horse of *Pacolet*, and getting him, came unto the Chamber of *Clerimond*, and by Art caused her to rise and make her ready, and setting her on the Horse behind him, came unto a Window, turned the Pin, and suddenly he arrived in the Tent of King *Trompart*. Being come thither, he cried out aloud, saying, Great King, sleep not, but hasten you hither, and you shall see the pleasant Lady *Clerimond*, whom I have stolen from *Aquitain*, and with her *Pacolet*'s Horse: Now, said the King, I well perceive thy Love; is this the Sister of *Ferragus*? Yea, said *Adrimain*, and I have stolen her away, and also betrayed *Pacolet* my fellow Magician; for he shall never be Master of his Horse again. Ay, but (said the King) art thou acquainted with the Manner of his Horse? O! long since, worthy King, and by virtue of the Pin know how to govern him. Having made this known unto King *Trompart*, he thought to make Experience of the Horse himself; and taking *Clerimond* behind him, resolved to transport her into his own Country, and there marry her.

Being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his Arms, (for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted Sleep) and set her on the Horse of Wood. All this *Adrimain* was Eye-witness of, and said thus unto him: My Lord, if you fail one Jot of the true Use of the Horse, both yourself and the Lady will be in very great Danger. Fear not that, quoth *Trompart*, and so turning the Pin, he mounted swiftly into the Air, and before the next Morning he was two hundred Miles on his Way, but not at his Journey's End. Now awaked the fair Lady *Clerimond* out of her enchanted Sleep, who seeing herself so deluded, fell suddenly into a Swoon. This Chance struck to the Heart of King *Trompart*; for he was afraid lest she had been dead, and so turning the Pin, he stopt the Horse in a fair green Field, by a Fountain; then taking the Lady from the Horse, he laid her on the Grass, and took a little Water, and cast it on her Face, and the Lady recovering, made such grievous Lamentations, that King *Trompart* was well nigh out of his Wits. Within this Place

there was a Shepherd, of whom King *Trompart* required something to eat, which he gave unto the Lady, who eat thereof, and was refreshed. At last being come again unto her Speech, weeping, uttered these Words: 'Unhappy I, above all Creatures, for I have lost my Joy by accursed Treason. Alas, *Valentine* my Love! cursed be he that separated us.' King *Trompart* hearing her so clamorous, reproved her soundly, saying: Lady, leave off these foolish Words of the Christian Boy, or else I shall separate thy Head from thy Body; is it not better for thee to be my Wife, who am sole Lord of these Territories, than to have a beggarly start-up, that hath neither Land nor Livings? And with these Words he would have kissed her, but the Lady disdainful him, hit him with her Fist upon the Mouth.

This strange and unlook'd for Disdainfulness, put King *Trompart* in such an Anger, that in a furious Rage he caught her up, and set her upon the Horse again; and turning the Pin the contrary way, instead of carrying her into his own Country, presently he lighted in *India*, in the midst of a Market-place kept there that Day. The People seeing such a strange Sight, marvelled much thereat. The Lady *Clerimond* by this time knew the Horse to be *Pacolet*'s, and said, Now am I falsely betrayed, and *Pacolet* robbed of his Horse; but my dear *Valentine*, he it is who is most near to my Heart; for now shall I never see thee more. King *Trompart* thought for all this, that he had been in his own Country, still beating down her pitiful Lamentations with bitter Words. But mark what followed: Tidings were brought unto the King of *India* of what had happened: who commanded them to be brought before him. But this fell out ill for King *Trompart*; for the King of *India* gave him a dull Welcome, saying, you are he that put my Brother to Death, therefore I will be revenged on thee, and so caused his Head to be smitten off. After the Lady was led into the King's Palace, where he sat in Person, he thus said: Lady, I know not of whence you are, but by the bright Splendor of your Face my Heart is enthrall'd; wherefore if you please to be my Wife, I will make you Queen of all this spacious Continent. Sir, quoth she, you speak graciously, but I have made a solemn Vow not to take any Husband for the Space of one whole Year; wherefore if it pleaseth you to let my Vow be accomplished, then will I willingly consent thereto. Well, said the King, thy Answer is reasonable, let it be as thou hast said; perform thy Vow, and remain within my Palace; and commanded that her Attendants should be as great as if she had been his Queen, allowing her a Chamber

Chamber of State, into which Chamber she caused to be brought the Wooden Horse that carried her thither, and being there, she placed it in the secretest Place that she could devise, and still prayed she might be freed from that Danger. Now leave we her for a while, and return to *Pacolet*, and look back also to *Aquitain*, and see the Mourning that is made for the Lady *Clerimond*.

The Night after *Adrimain* betrayed *Pacolet*, great Lamentations were made for the fair Lady *Clerimond* throughout the City of *Aquitain*; moreover, when *Pacolet* found *Adrimain* absent, he doubted more, and looking round about the Chamber wherein the Horse stood, he suddenly missed it: All this so fallen out, *Pacolet* fell into a most grievous Passion, insomuch, that had not *Orson* at that Instant come in, he would have destroyed himself.

Pacolet being thus rescued by *Orson*, and beholding the general Sorrow for the beauteous Lady *Clerimond*, began thus to comfort them, Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on the Traitor *Adrimain*, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithal he departed, and cloathed himself like a gallant Maid, and took his Way to the Host of *Ferragus*, where many Pagans desired his Love; but *Pacolet* excused himself, and said; 'Pardon me, I pray you, for I am already promised to the Enchanter *Adrimain*.' And so they let him pass on. At last *Pacolet* came to the Tent where *Adrimain* was, at which *Adrimain* stood amazed, and was so deeply overcome in Love, that at Night he detained him in his Chamber: Now *Pacolet* took his Advantage, and seemed to favour his Love, and said; 'My Lord, know this, I have been desired of so many, but I think you the worthiest to be first served.' 'My Charmer, quoth *Adrimain*, fear nothing, make good Cheer, and be merry, for my Love is fix'd, and I will use you well.' Now he committed the Maiden to one of his Servants, to be served with all the Dainties that could be had.

Pacolet, being thus highly feasted in the Tent of *Ferragus*, demanded of the Servant of *Adrimain*, what was become of King *Trompart*? the Servant said, I think he is returned again into his own Country, and has carried with him the Lady *Clerimond* upon a Horse of Wood, which my Master had given him. *Pacolet* hearing of this, was grieved to the Heart. By this Time was *Adrimain* come unto his Tent, saying to *Pacolet*, 'Charmer, it is Time to go to Rest! See, here is the Bed we mean to sport in.' 'Your Will be done, said *Pacolet*: Then *Adrimain* put off his Cloaths, and went to Bed; but *Pacolet* so enchanted him to Sleep, that to awake he could not

till the Morning. As he dealt with *Adrimain*, so he did with all round him; and putting off his Woman's Attire, he cloathed himself in the richest Cloaths that *Adrimain* had; and after, with his own Sword, cut off his Head, and bore it away with him: Having thus done, he took his Way towards the Tent of *Ferragus*, which he found well guarded, and there by his Art, cast them all in a heavy Sleep. This done, he entered the Tent of *Ferragus*, where he suddenly made him leap out of his Bed, and dress himself; so tying himself to his Girdle, made him run by his Side like a Spaniel, till he came to the very Entrance of the Gates of *Aquitain*.

When *Pacolet* was come to the Gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himself, accompanied with many of his Barons, who spying *Pacolet*, they said unto him; Where is *Clerimond*, that thou dost not bring her again? he answered, Lords, be patient a while, I cannot shew you all at once: Know this, I am fully revenged on *Adrimain*, for here I have brought his Head; and here is *Ferragus*, who, by my Art, I have also surprized, as you may see. Then said *Orson*, you have done very well. Nay, Lords, more yet I have to say, which is, I have enchanted the whole Host of *Ferragus* to sleep, therefore if ever you mean to have a complete Victory, go now. My Lords, quoth *Orson*, methinks *Pacolet* hath well advised us, therefore let us go on: So they slaughter'd all that lay before them, and put *Ferragus* into a most filthy, dark and loathsome Prison until their Return.

After this great Slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into *Aquitain*, and there commanded to have the Giant *Ferragus* brought before him, who by this time awaked out of his enchanted Sleep, unto whom the Duke thus said; *Ferragus*, if thou wilt forsake *Mahomet*, and receive Baptism, thou shalt live, which if thou refuse, thou shalt surely die. No, said *Ferragus*, I had rather suffer a thousand Deaths: So he was suddenly beheaded. After his Death *Orson* took Leave of the Duke, and went towards *Constantinople*, to aid his Father the Grecian Emperor, and his Uncle King *Pepin* of France, against the unbelieving *Sarazens*, that had strongly besieged the City; but a little before his Departure, the Duke said unto him, 'Worthy Knight, since you are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you Company. *Orson* was very joyful to hear him say so, and gave him Thanks; so taking some small time to set Things in Readiness, he committed the Keeping of the City to a valiant Knight, and then proceeded on their Journey. But by the Way the Empress *Bellissant* much lamented the hard

Usage of her Lord; but *Orson* pitying her, said, 'Mother, leave off your Tears, only joy in that you have been falsely accused, which now will increase your Honour: But I fear most our Entrance into the City, which as I hear, is much troubled with *Sarazens*. Nay, said *Pacolei*, fear not that, for I will work a Device to enter, and myself will go before and put it in Force: Do so, said *Orson*, and tell *Valentine* the hard Fortune of *Clerimond*. 'Nay, quoth *Pacolei*, not I, I will be no Bearer of such sad Tidings.'

Now King *Pepin* and the Emperor being strongly besieged, were in great Distress for Victuals in the City, and there was no Way to be relieved but by the Sword. *Valentine* knowing their great Necessity, accompanied with the *Green Knight* and a worthy Band of Soldiers, issued out of *Constantinople*, and seized upon two hundred Chariots full of Victuals belonging to the Pagans, and at the same time slew all those that attended them. Having gotten this Booty, they made their Return towards *Constantinople*, thinking to recover the City, but they were begirt round about; on the one Side by the Soldan, and on the other with the King of *Arabia*; and thirdly, with a King called *Afficion*. Amongst these Champions happened a terrible bloody Conflict, but *Valentine* in single Combat, killed the King of *Dramagen* and the King of *Glarion*. The *Green Knight* also behaved himself gallantly, for at one Blow he struck off the Shield-arm of the King of *Morien*, and before that slew his Brother. But all this Valour little availed, for in the End they were both taken Prisoners, and led before the Soldan, who having them in Possession, assembled fifteen Pagan Knights to adjudge them to Death. *Valentine* being thus in Bands, greatly lamented the State of the Lady *Clerimond*, taking Leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the rest; saying, 'I must now forsake you all, and never again behold your Faces.' The *Green Knight* seeing him so passionate, said, 'Let us die in a good Cause, and welcome Death.'

Now as the Soldan sat in his Chair of State to proceed to Judgment, in the mean Time comes *Pacolei* in the Midst of the Throng, not knowing what had happened, and stood before the Judgment-seat, and kneeling down, said, 'Dread Sir, know I am a Messenger from your Brother *Godart*, the great King of *Argier*, who to your Succour hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, and by me requireth on which Side of your Army they shall be ranked. Again he prays you, if you have any Christian Prisoners, to send them to him, and he will send them into his own Country to draw the Plow, and I think

here stand a Couple of fit Instruments for that Purpose.' The Soldan rejoiced at these Tidings, and commanded that he should be feasted for that Night: Mean Time *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* were glad of *Pacolei*'s Company. In the dead time of the Night, *Pacolei* went unto them, and unbound them, and gave each of them a Horse, and bid them follow him. Being out of the Enemies Reach, *Pacolei* said thus unto them, 'Lords, be comforted, for in this Land is assembled the Duke of *Aquitain* and the Knight *Orson*, the noble Empress, and the Lady *Fezon*. Ay, but (said *Valentine*) why cometh not the Lady *Clerimond*? Then answered *Pacolei*, she would have come, but being Sea-sick, she was forced to return again to *Aquitain*: So *Valentine* at that Time questioned no farther with him.

Then *Pacolei* advised them all to go to the City of *Constantinople*, and on the Morrow to issue out thereof, with a mighty Army on the Enemy. In the mean Time, I will on the other Side so bestir myself, that the Host of the warlike Duke shall come up and give a fresh Assault: Now the Soldan seeing this, will imagine it to be his Brother the King of *Argier*.

Pacolei, said *Valentine*, thou hast well advised, and so shall it be effected. Thus they departed: Then *Pacolei* took his Way to the Duke of *Aquitain*, who was yet on the Sea-shore, telling him that he had been with the Host of the Soldan, and how he had freed *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*. Then *Pacolei* said to *Orson*, there is yet one Thing more to be done, and it is this, that To-morrow in the Morning, we must assail the Host of the *Sarazens* on the one Side, and they of *Constantinople* on the other, and so by that Means we shall overthrow them quite; for all that come with you, will be thought to aid the *Sarazens*. Then the Duke drew up his Men in Order, and kept themselves so that Night.

The next Morning, the Emperor and King *Pepin* valiantly brought forth their Men to the Fight, and divided their Host into five Battalions. The first was delivered to *Valentine*; the second to the *Green Knight*; the third to King *Pepin*; and the fourth to *Millain Douglar*; and the fifth to *Samson* of *Orleans*, one who bore in his Banner a Bear of Silver. At break of Day these Powers issued out of the City, to give an Assault upon the Enemy: Being come into the Field, and sounding their Instruments, the Noise of which, so affrighted the *Sarazens*, that they ran out of their Tents, crying an Alarm. This Battle was extreme hot for the Christians that Day, yet the Enemy had no Cause to Boast. King *Pepin* behaved himself valiantly, and cried out to his Soldiers, St.

Dennis,

Dennis, St. Dennis. Then the *Sarazens* cried out to the *Soldan* to retire, for the Safeguard of their Lives; for this Night we have lost two Prisoners, and also there is coming against us a new Supply of a great Army. Then the *Soldan* thought that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forward, and rouzed up their Courage doubly, infomuch that they forced the Christians to fall back, but little availed their Courage; for there came upon them the Duke of *Aquitain* with his Forces, and attacked them so fiercely, that they put to the Sword all that came before them; and thus the Christians were Conquerors.

When the Battle was ended, and the Christians had rallied their scattered Forces, *Valentine* and *Orson* came before the Emperor with dutiful Reverence, Father, quoth *Valentine*, here you may behold my Brother *Orson*, whom as yet you never knew: Then the Emperor embraced him with Tears, and likewise the worthy King *Pepin*, as also the *Green Knight*, *Blandiman*, and *Guigard*, the Merchant, who had vanquished the Arch-Priest: all these with great Triumph set out to visit the Tent of the noble Empress *Bellissant*, and the Lady *Fezon*. When they came to the Tent of the Empress *Bellissant* and the Lady *Fezon*; and when the Emperor saw his Wife *Bellissant*, he leaped off his Horse, and in Tears and Sighs, not being able to speak, embraced her, and *Valentine* and *Orson* bore them Company in their Lamentations, so also did many of the rest there assembled. At last Words took place, and the Emperor recounted all the hard Usage he had offered the Empress, requiring her Pardon for what was past. My Lord, quoth she, since it hath pleased the Fates to bring me to your Sight, I freely forgive all Wrongs; but long to see the Man that proved my Innocence with his Sword. Love, quoth the Emperor, this is he by whom your Honour was preserved. Sir, quoth the Empress, you ought to be regarded for your Service to the Emperor of Greece, and the King of France, for which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thousand Marks in Gold. Lady, I thank your Bounty, and will attend you during Life. Then said *Valentine*, Mother, I pray tell me some Tidings of the Lady *Clerimond*. Fair Son, the Lady *Clerimond* is stolen from *Aquitain*, and given to King *Trompart*, that came to the Pagans Aid. *Valentine* hearing this, looked strangely upon *Pacolet*, and would have smitten him, thinking he had deceived him: but *Pacolet* entreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stolen away my Horse, but I am revenged on him by cutting off his Head. *Valentine* understanding these misfortunes, and that every one was innocent, fell into bitter Passions for his Loss.

CHAP. XXXV.

How King Pepin took Leave of the Emperor at his Departure from Greece, and how Orson went along with him. How Garnier fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused Orson falsely of Treason; and how the Knife was found in the King's Bed. How Orson claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him; and it was (by twelve Peers of France) granted. How Valentine in seeking Clerimond, arrived at Antioch, and fought with the Dragon; and in the End slew him.

THESE Wars thus ended, King *Pepin* took Leave of the Emperor, and returned into France, *Orson* would needs go with his Uncle King *Pepin*, and spend the Remainder of his Days in his Service. The King was content, and said thus unto him: I will make you high Constable of France; moreover, if it so chance, that my young Son *Charles* should de cease before me, I will make you King of France: I thank you, gracious Uncle, and you shall find me faithful, and along with me will I bear the Lady *Fezon*. The Day of taking Leave came, and each embraced other with Kisses and Tears. But *Valentine* could not rest, for he had lost his Love; wherefore, said he, I am resolved to seek her for whom I endangered my Life, and by my Sword did gain: Her I bewail, and her I will recover again if she be alive: But if I find her not, short and woful will be my Days. Then he called *Pacolet* to him, and said, Wilt thou serve me and be my Companion in this troublesome Task? Sir, quoth he, willingly; and am ready whenever you shall set forward. Then *Valentine* made all things in Readiness for his Departure, and went to Sea, and left his Crown and Country, only accompanied with three Attendants. Now we leave him, and speak of King *Pepin*, who by this time is seated in Paris, and was honourably received: But above all, the valiant *Orson* was highly esteemed, infomuch, that he had even all the Command of the Kingdom delivered unto him. If ought was to be brought before the King, *Orson* was the Man to be applied to.

This Greatness of *Orson* fretted *Haufray* and *Henry* (of whom you have heard before) to the Heart, infomuch that they plotted how to take away his Life, saying, it was much to their Indignity that *Orson* should be thus preferred before them, being Sons to the King: Surely (says the one to the other) his Glory cannot long endure, for Pride will be his Overthrow. Ay, but (said *Haufray*) understand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our eldest Sister, to wit, *Florent* and *Garnier*, these are both hardy and fierce,

fierce, and by them methinks some Plot might be set on Foot; again, they are fit Persons to execute any Villainy, for one is Butler to the King, and the other is Usher to his private Chamber: Now either of these may enter into the King's Chamber, and murder him in his Bed, and such a Deed being done, it will surely be laid to *Orson's* Charge, for he only hath Guard of his Person. If this can be effected, *Orson* will surely be condemned to Death, and the Realm will readily fall into our Hands. In this it is necessary to use Secrecy.

Upon this Resolution they sent for these two Instruments of Murder, to acquaint them with the Treason; and being come, *Haufray* said unto them, Sirs, my Brother and I have laid a Plot to do us Good and raise you to Honour; which Thing we chose rather to offer unto you, for that you are allied unto us; and therefore we respect you before others. Thus it is, You know our Father the King never loved us, but hath ever advanced Strangers, and left us slightly regarded; these things considered, my Brother and I have determined that you two Brothers, descended from our Sister, shall put our doating Father to Death, and then we shall have the Government into our own Hand. This Thing by us first plotted, is fittest to be executed by one of you, and I think you, *Garnier*, to be fittest for it, because you being Usher to the King's Chamber, may convey yourself behind some Arras, and when the King is in Bed, murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King is slain, the Fact will be laid upon *Orson*, for he only hath the Charge of his Body, and so we shall quickly get him adjudged to Death: and as for little *Charles*, we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle, (said *Garnier*) doubt not but that I shall undertake this Enterprize. Shortly after, *Garnier*, on a Night when the King was at Supper, got a Knife, and secretly entered into the King's Chamber, and hid himself about the Hangings. When the Hour of the King's going to Bed came, he was attended by his Guard and Chamberlain in the usual Manner. The King being in Bed, every Man departed save only *Orson*, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep: *Orson* seeing the King asleep, without making any Noise, left him, and laid himself down on a Pallat by him.

The dead time of the Night being come, the time which *Garnier* intended (having the Knife ready) for this bloody Enterprize; but being come to the Bed-side, ready to lift up his Arm to strike the fatal Stroke, he thought the King would awake, but trembling for Fear, he laid him down by the Bed-side, and durst not stir: Anon he would adventure again,

but being, as before, possessed with Fear, he put the Knife within the Bed, then returned to the Place from whence he came. *Orson* all this while slept, doubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful Dream, which was, that one would have robbed his Wife of her Honour! also he thought that beside a River he saw two Herons that fought with a Hawk, but the Hawk defended himself so valiantly, that he had slain the Herons, had they not been assisted by a Multitude of little Birds; and the Herons likewise had slain the Hawk, had not the Eagle rescued him.

At this Dream *Orson* awaked, and was much astonished thereat, saying, The Gods preserve my Brother *Valentine* from Treason. By this Time the Day broke, and *Orson* softly stole out of the Chamber, fearing to awake the King. When *Garnier* saw *Orson* gone, he followed soon after, and took his Way towards the Chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longed to hear the News. *Garnier*, quoth they, tell us what is done. Lords, said *Garnier*, I would not do the like again for all the Gold in France, and yet I have not hurt the King! for still as I was lifting up my Hand to strike, Fear and Horror did affright me, that I durst no more adventure, but I have advised me of another Plot, and have on Purpose left the Knife in the King's Bed, and thus it is: We will accuse *Orson* of Treason, and tell the King there are four Traitors, and *Orson* is the principal. Also we will make away little *Charles*, and so wholly possess the Crown. To prove this, we will say, that for this Purpose *Orson* hath conveyed a Knife into the King's Bed; if any demand how we know thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the Door heard all their Conference. *Garnier*, said *Haufray*, you say well, but if *Orson* deny it, you and your Brother shall crave Combat against him; so that in Case you should be likely to be worsted, my Brother and I shall find Men enough to rescue you. Thus they resolved, and thus was Treason laid the second Time for *Orson* the innocent. The next Day when the King was at Dinner, attended by *Haufray* and *Henry*, they shewed good Countenance to *Orson*. When *Garnier* saw his Time, he came before the King, saying, Worthy King, your Majesty hath bestowed upon me many kingly Favours, wherefore it is my Duty to open to you a Treason, which I lately chanced to hear, and to the End you may have a Care of your Person, I will discover unto you the Inventors thereof.

Garnier prayed he might lay Hands on *Orson* first, for he was the principal Traitor. The Number in all are four! and *Orson* is the Man should kill you in your Bed with a Knife; and that your Majesty may the

the better credit me, this Day, as they met together, I was in a certain Place, and heard *Orson* say, the Knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your Bed; now if it please you either to go or send, you shall find my Words true. Sir, said *Florent*, my Brother speaketh nothing but Truth. The King hearing of these Words, beheld *Orson* with a mighty strange Countenance, and at last said: 'False and disloyal Man, can such a Thing enter into thy Breast as to take away my Life, whom I have more respected than my own Children?' 'My Liege, quoth *Orson*, be not so lightly carried away by this false Accusation, for I protest I am clear from any such Thought, and shall prove Envy to be the Author of all this I reason.' Speak no more, said the King, for if the Knife be found in the Bed, I will crave no further Proof.' So calling to his Lords, he said: 'Lords, I was never so confounded as at this present.' Sir, said *Millain Douglar*, I know not what to say, but I cannot believe that *Orson* is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty. 'Yea, but (said the King) if we find the Knife in the Bed, it is an evident Sign to move me to believe it: I pray let us go make Trial.' So the King went into his Chamber, accompanied with many Witnesses, being there, they found the Knife as *Garnier* said: 'Alas! said the King, in whom may I trust, when my own Kinsman seeketh my Life? But I vow he shall suffer a shameful Death.'

With that a valiant Knight named *Simon*, came to *Orson*, who loved him well, and said: 'Alas! Sir, fly and save your Life, for the King hath found the Knife in his Bed, and hath vowed your Death.' *Orson* said, 'I fear nothing.' The King entred the Hall where *Orson* was guarded with fifty-one Knights! and assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgment. *Orson* being brought before the King and his Lords, said unto them: 'Worthy Lords, since my Words cannot defend me, I require but the Custom of your Country, which is, that when a Man shall be accused of Murder or Treason, he might crave Combat against his Enemy. Now for my Part, I hold myself innocent, which I will maintain, if by your Counsels you grant me that which of right belongeth unto me; and further to clear myself, here is my Gage; if I be overcome, do with my Body what pleaseth you.' *Orson*, said *Garnier*, I think you had better hold your Peace; for the Thing being already proved, we have no Reason to answer you in the Field. Ah Traitor! there is nothing yet proved, for a Man that feareth not Damnation, and desireth Honour, will say any Thing. Upon these Words the twelve Peers of France caused *Orson* to be removed out of the Place,

and also the Brothers, his Adversaries, while in the mean time the rest disputed the Question. At last it was judged that *Orson's* Demand was reasonable, and that he ought to be heard: On which the Brothers were called in again before the King: Then Duke *Millain* demanded of *Garnier*, Who were Confederates with him in the King's Death? 'Lords, quoth he, I will not betray them for all the Wealth in France.' *Garnier*, said the Judge, I give Sentence, that you and your Brother take up *Orson's* Gage and fight with him; for since you conceal the rest of the Murderers, it is to be doubted that there is Malice in the Plot. *Orson* at this Sentence rejoiced, and cast his Glove to the two Traitors, saying: Lords, here is my Glove that I cast down to these Traitors, upon this Condition, that if my Cause be foul, or by them conquered, I offer my Body to your Will and Pleasure. Rise then, said the King, for Judgment is past, and for your further Security, it were good we had some Hostage. With that *Haufray* and *Henry* offered themselves Body for Body, for *Garnier* and his Brother: And for *Orson*, stood *Millain Douglar* and Duke *Samson*. So a Month's Day was assigned for the Combat.

The Time being come that they should fight, Duke *Millain Douglar*, *Samson*, *Galeram* and *Gervais* brought forth *Orson*, (for he was well beloved) armed and well mounted; who rode thro' the City nobly accompanied towards the Place appointed. He was not long there till *Haufray* and *Henry* entred the Field, with their two Nephews royally armed. *Garnier* and *Florent*, the two Traitors, greatly feared *Orson*, but *Haufray* and *Henry* still comforted them, promising them Aid. Being thus in Readiness, the Bishop of *Paris* came unto them and gave them all three an Oath, according to the Law of Arms, and then the Bishop departed. After came the Heralds and Serjeants of the Field to clear the Place. Now *Haufray* had provided three thousand Men hard by, and gave them Command, That as soon as they heard him blow his Horn, they should set forward towards him. This rejoiced the Traitors to the Heart; but it little availed them, for as soon as the Trumpets gave Signal, *Orson* couched his Spear, and putting Spurs to his Horse, ran upon them with Fury, and gave *Garnier* such a Stroke, that it ran thro' both Shield and Armour: *Florent*, on the other Side, gave *Orson* such a Blow, that he thought he had struck against a Tower. 'False and accursed Traiter, (quoth *Orson*) thou hast wrongfully accused me, and e'er the Day pass I shall shew thee where Loyalty doth rest.' And at these

Words

Words, with his Sword smote *Garnier* out of his Saddle, and withal pulled off his Helm, and had cut off his Head if his Brother *Florent* had not rescued him.

Again, *Orson* made towards *Garnier*, and striking off his Ear, said; 'Fair Master, I would be loath you should lose by the Bargain.' Then began a fresh Combat between these three Champions. *Garnier* having recovered again, came upon *Orson* with all his Force, thinking to have left some Mark of that Encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him, he had soon been slain. Thus *Orson* had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout Courage, and besides they relied much upon the Rescue of *Haufray* and *Henry*: but still *Orson* followed, and at last so wounded *Garnier*, that he was forced to forsake his Horse, being on the Ground, he smote *Orson's* Horse, inasmuch, that he cut off one of his Legs, and fell'd him to the Earth; But *Orson* being light and strong, leap'd from off his Back, and being on the Ground, he took *Garnier* between his Arms so strongly, that he took away his Shield, and threw him on the Earth; but as he would have wounded him in the Belly, *Florent* came upon *Orson*, and gave him such a Stroke on the Helm, that he made him stagger: *Orson* vexed thereat, smote him so, that he overthrew his Horse dead to the Earth, and after took off his Helm.

Florent, (said his Brother) fly not, return or we shall be vanquished; and therewithal they made a fresh Encounter upon *Orson*, and with their Swords laid on so lustily, that the Strokes entred his Armour and drew Blood. *Orson* feeling himself wounded, smote off one of *Florent's* Arms, but yet he gave not over. *Orson* spying him make a Blow at him, made as if he would have struck at *Garnier*, but suddenly withdrawing his Arm, hit *Florent* in such wise, that he fell down dead to the Earth; and after said to *Garnier*, Traitor, thou shalt share the same Fate except thou confests the Treason. Not so, *Orson*, for I will be revenged for my Brother's Death. *Haufray* and *Henry* disliked the Match, and said, One of our Nephews is slain, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confests the Treason, and thereby bring us in Danger. Brother, said *Haufray*, I will tell you what may be done; as soon as we perceive *Garnier* to be overcome, before he confests any Thing we will enter the Field, that so the Treason shall not be known. Quoth *Henry*, be it so. Now are the Champions at it in the Field. *Garnier*, said *Orson*, you cannot escape my Hands; therefore confests the Treason, and I will save your Life.

'Boy, (quoth *Garnier*) thy fair Promises are little worth, for seeing I have lost an Ear, I little respect any Place of Honour, so rather choosing to die valiantly, or conquer thee, I am resolved here to finish my Fortune, either to conquer or be conquered. Agreed, (quoth *Orson*) and since Death is so welcome to thee, defend thyself, for this is thy longest Day of Life.' And thus he made at *Garnier*, and by Strength of Arms, threw him under him, and pulled off his Helm. *Haufray* seeing there was no Way but one, cried out, *Orson*, slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, and we will do Justice to him, as so foul an Act deserveth. Now *Haufray* said unto *Garnier*, 'Nephew, confests the Fact, and we will apply to the King for your Pardon.' 'Lords, said *Garnier*, I did put the Knife into the King's Bed.' In speaking these Words *Haufray* drew forth his Sword and run him thro', and after said: 'Lords, let this Traitor be hanged on the Gallows as he hath well deserved: And Cousin *Orson*, I am glad of your Victory, for it proveth you innocent: And tho' *Garnier* was my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my Blood.' News coming to the Lady *Fezon*, she was glad of *Orson's* Victory: King *Pepin* also came, saying; 'Nephew, you have endured dangerous Wounds.' Uncle, quoth *Orson*, the Traitors are vanquished, and *Haufray* made *Garnier* confests the Treason, and so killed him. Nephew, (quoth King *Pepin*) beware of that *Haufray*, for he hath surely a Hand in it, but for this time I will hold my Peace.' The King and the Barons returned into the City of *Paris*, and made Joy for the Victory. *Haufray* and *Henry* spoke well of him, but in their Hearts they lodged Mischief, which after came to Light, and they had their Desert; where we will leave them and return to *Valentine*, who rode from Place to Place, to find out *Clerimond*. *Valentine* having travelled long, at last arrived at the City of *Antioch*, thinking to find out *Clerimond*; *Paol* being with him, could speak their Language, and took up their Lodging in a great Man's House, but the Host of the House was somewhat doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, would hearken, inasmuch that at last he understood they were Christians; whereupon he went to the King of *Antioch*, and said: 'Sir, there are four Christians in my House, who have entred your Land without paying Tribute.' The King said: 'Thou hast well done, let them be brought before me.' So being come, he said unto *Valentine*, Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two Things, one of which you must make Choice of, or else suffer Death. What is it, quoth

Valentine

Valentine, for I would do any thing to save my Life? The King said, You must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with the dreadful Dragon, that hath devoured many Men: she is bigger than a Horse, winged like a Fowl, feather'd like a Griffin, has the Head of a Serpent, a great Sting within her Mouth, a fierce Look, a Skin covered with red Scales, and hath the Feet of a Lion. Quoth *Valentine*, This is some hideous Monster, yet I will try my Fortune against her, if you will but grant me one Request, which is, that if I conquer the Dragon, you will then forsake *Mahomet* and become a Christian. The King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there was never any yet returned alive that attempted it. Sir, quoth *Valentine*, let me have a Bout or two with this Monster. Then he caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastened a great Number of Spikes of Steel a Foot long, and as sharp as Needles.

This Shield being made, *Valentine* put on Armour, and buckling on his Helm, girded his Sword to his Side, took Leave of his Men, and mounting his Horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, every one got into their Windows to behold the Fight. Now they of the City were obliged to provide for the Dragon, either the Carcass of a Man or Beast, which, if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City, and having eaten her Prey, she would return unto her Den again without doing any Harm. All such Malefactors as any Way deserved Death, were continually thrown unto this fearful Monster; but if they had no Malefactors, then they went to the Sea-side to take up Christians, if they happened to come on Shore, and they were brought to be devoured by the Dragon.

Now by this Time is *Valentine* within Sight of the Dragon: She seeing him come towards her, closed



her Wings most fiercely, casting out of her Mouth Smoak like Fire: Then *Valentine* descended from his Horse, and left his sharp Axe at his Saddle-bow, and went towards the Serpent, thinking to have smitten her; but she lifted up her Paw to smite *Valentine*, who subtilly watching this Opportunity lifted up his Shield (armed as you have heard with Spikes) and so the Serpent broached her Foot upon them, who feeling herself hurt she cried most horribly,

drawing back and recoiling: *Valentine* pursued, but when the Serpent saw him approach, she rose upon her Feet, but much fearing the Shield, she ran back. The King beholding this, said: 'See yonder is a most valiant Knight, whom we ought to reverence for his Hardiness.' Also the fair Queen *Rosamond* fell in Love with *Valentine* to see him so adventurous.

Now grew the Battle fierce and dangerous between *Valentine* and the Dragon, but still she fearing the Pricks

of the Shield, by which he held her in Play; for in the one Hand he bore his Shield, and in the other his Sword, wherewith he gave the Serpent a marvellous Blow on the Ear, and with the Blow he broke his Sword. *Valentine* was in great Danger when his Sword was broken, for the Beast grew so angry, that with her Paw she rent his Armour quite thro'. *Valentine* still pursued her, and drew forth a Knife and struck it in her Throat, but she little regarded it. *Valentine* seeing all this availed nothing, ran and fetched the Axe from his Saddle-bow, and returning unto her, subtilly waiting his Advantage, gave the Serpent such a Blow with his Axe, that he cut off most Part of her Tail, at which she roared most hideously. After this she flew at *Valentine's* Head, and pulling off his Helm, smote him to the Ground, but he quickly getting up, was much troubled at his Head uncovered. *Pacolet* perceiving his Master in Distress, got into the City, and putting himself in Armour, got another Helm and bore it to his Master. *Valentine* Perceiving him, said: 'Friend, I am nigh well spent, go thy way and commend me to my Friends, for if thou stay here thou must die with me. But for all this *Pacolet* came to *Valentine* and delivered the Helm. The Serpent seeing that, came to *Pacolet*, and taking him by the right Leg pull'd him under her, gave him a Push with her Paw, that he felt it thro' his Armour, and had slain him had not *Valentine* with his Axe cut off her Nose, and put out one of her Eyes. These Wounds made the Beast mad, who opening her Wings, flew to the Top of a high Rock. Then went *Valentine* to his Helm, thinking to have put it on, but suddenly the Beast came flying down, and he was fain to cover his Head with his Shield, which the Dragon spying, returned again to the Rock. Then *Pacolet* put on *Valentine's* Helm, and said: 'Sir, I am sore wounded, and must of Necessity return to the City to get some Relief, for my Strength faileth.' So he departed. As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she attacked *Valentine*, and flying directly at his Head, thought to have laid Holdt hereon, but *Valentine* threw his Axe so right that he cut off one of her Wings, whereby she could not fly. The Dragon being down, *Valentine* quickly smote off the other Wing, so that the Battle was most violent between them, insomuch that he was not able to lift up his Arm any longer to wield his Axe; but leaving all, he got upon a Tree to rest his wearied Limbs, and the Beast not able to fly any more, beheld him with a cruel Countenance, casting out of her Mouth nothing but stinking Vapours. *Valentine*, being well refreshed, came down, and

went towards the Dragon, who ran fiercely at him. *Valentine* still put the Shield before him, and with his Axe cut her left Thigh, wherewith she fell to the Earth; *Valentine* still pursued his Strokes, and ran his Axe so far into her Throat, that she fell down dead. *Valentine* having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called to him, and said: 'Of all Knights thou art the most hardy, for by thy Valour is our City delivered of a most fearful Enemy, that hath damaged us. With these Words they entered the City; and so to the Palace, where a solemn Feast was held. Then the King caused *Valentine's* Wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise honoured him, for she was enamoured of him so, that to gain his Love, she would have wrought the Death of the King her Husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself and healed his Wounds in the City of *Antioch*, said unto the King: 'Sir, you remember your Promise, that you and your People would receive Baptism if I overcame the Dragon; you see she is slain by me only.' 'True, (quoth the King) and what I have promised I will perform.' And thereupon sent this present Edict throughout the Land, That every one should forsake *Mabomet*, and be baptized. The Queen sent for *Valentine* to her Chamber, who presently went to her, and said; 'Lady, I am come at your Command, and ready to do your Service.' Ah! said the Lady, thou art of great Hardiness, Wisdom, Strength, and all Beauties belonging to a famous Warrior: Happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy Love; O! that I were not a Woman, or a Woman not under Subjection: O! I could love thee beyond human Reason, hadst thou but so much Liberty as to embrace me and grant me Love. 'Lady, (quoth *Valentine*) I thank you, but you have wedded a puissant King, and him only you ought to love and honour.' Knight, (said she) 'tis true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I beheld thee all my Thoughts are captivated. *Valentine* seeing the Queen so eager, replied; Lady, if the King should but know or suspect me, I should surely be put to Death. Again, he is old, you are young, rest yourself content till I return from my intended Journey to the Holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead, I will give myself unto you.

Hereupon she played the Part of many Women who are weary of their Husbands for the Love of others; even so began this Queen to practise, for one Night as she was going to Bed, a Cup of Wine was brought unto her, as the Custom was, wherein she conveyed Poison, and after presented it to the King:

King: but he having some Doubt thereof, disliked it, saying: 'Lady, look what Drink you have brewed, either drink it yourself or tell me what you put in it?' the Lady being in this Perplexity, knew not what to say, but falling on her Knees, craved Pardon, and said, *Valentine* procured it to be done: I believe thee, (quoth the King) and pardon thee; so they lay together that Night, and she requested that *Valentine* might be put to Death: He shall as sure as I live, (quoth the King). Hearing the King say so, she was very sorrowful, and secretly calling to one of her Maidens, sent to *Valentine* to tell him her Will, and what the King had decreed against him: *Valentine* hearing of this Accusation, whereof he was innocent, said: What will not a Woman undertake? Now for the Love of the Queen I must depart like a Traitor, or else lay her Shame still open to the World: Well, I will rather depart with Dishonour to myself than her. And therewithal calling up his Attendants, before the Morning he departed the City, and came to the Sea-side, where there lay a Ship full of Passengers, ready to put off; amongst the rest goes he and his Company; so hoisting Sails, they departed. On the Morrow when the King was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them, 'Lords, I am most deceived in the Man I most trusted, and he whom in Heart I held dearest, hath betrayed me. *Valentine* I mean, who to gain the lawless Love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to poison me. Therefore let us proceed to judge him some shameful Death.

Amongst the rest, an aged wise Baron said, we have no Reason to proceed against an Offender, without calling him to answer. Again, were he ever so great an Offender we ought to hear him. Whereupon *Valentine* was sent for, but instead of *Valentine* came his Host, who told them he was gone before the break of Day from his House, but whither he knew not. The King hearing this, suddenly sent forth Men to follow and pursue him; but all in vain, for he was past their Reach on the Sea. Shortly after that the King of *Antioch* was converted; but his Wife's Father, *Brandiffer* a Turk, had so great Spleen against the King for altering his Religion, that he sent to him for his Daughter *Rosamond*. When the King heard this unjust Demand, he gainsayed him; whereupon *Brandiffer* came upon him with an hundred thousand Pagans, and besieged his City. At last, within the Compass of four Months, by Treachery he obtained it, took the King Prisoner, and suddenly put him to Death, and crowned himself King of *Antioch*. This done, he returned to his

Realm, but as he was on the Sea, by a Tempest he was forced into the Land of *Greece*, to a little City called *Cretophe*.

Within this City was the Emperor of *Greece* newly arrived, where he and the *Green Knight*, with some other Company, had rode forth to sport themselves, and not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the Hands of *Brandiffer's* Soldiers; the Soldiers hastened towards the City, thinking to have seized the whole, but they found it manfully defended.

The Men of *Cretophe* were very sorry for the Loss of the Emperor and the *Green Knight*. At last they determined to send Letters unto *Bellissant* of what had happened, and to demand Aid against these Pagans. The Lady receiving these Letters was wondrous sad, and sending for their Captains and Men of War, made Preparations for a speedy Revenge. Also she sent for her Son *Orson*, and craved Aid of her Brother King *Pepin*: But *Brandiffer* had Scouts abroad to give him Notice of all that had happened, and fearing the Force of the *Greeks*, and their Prisoners Loss, they stole to the Sea-side, so taking Ship, in a short Time they arrived at *Leize*, in which Place they took a Castle wherein was kept his two Daughters, *Rosamond* and *Galazy*, who for their Beauty had been demanded by fourteen Kings. *Brandiffer* had yet no Design to marry them, wherefore he caused them to be kept within this Castle, for it was the strongest in the Land, and had a Bridge made by such cunning Art, that but one could pass at a Time: At the End of this Bridge, two fierce Lions stood to keep the Entry of the Castle. The Lady *Galazy* was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperor and the *Green Knight*, with other Christians, who had been there a long Time, were put. Where we leave them and shall shew you somewhat of the Lady *Clerimond*, who still remained in *India*.

C H A P. XXXVI.

How Clerimond, after the Year was past, feigned herself mad, because she would not wed the King of India: And of Lucar that would revenge the Death of his Father King Trompart upon the King of India. How Lucar, in the City of Esclariana, wedded Rosamond, the fair Daughter of Brandiffer: And how Valentine departed from Esclardy to breathe out Defiance; and of the Answer he brought from the Indian King.

YOU have already heard of the Death of King *Trompart*, who stole away the Lady *Clerimond* upon *Pacolei's* Horse: Also how she got Pardon for one whole Year before she would marry. Now is the Time expired, and all this while appeareth no

Succour for her Relief, which she had so long expected, therefore, poor Lady, now is she put to her Shifts, and to save her Maiden-head, she feigned herself very sick. This News came to the King's Ear, that the fair *Clerimond* was extreme sick, at which he grew very sad, and came to visit her; at last he would have put his Hand upon her Head to have held it, but she refusing, took his Hand away, and lift up her Head herself, making Signs that she would bite him, at which Action he wondred, and grew much astonished thereat.

After this she rolled her Eyes up and down, and made grievous Faces, in such wise that the King got him out of the Chamber, fearing lest she should prove mad. In this Manner she continued a long Time, and did act the Matter so well, that within fifteen Days she seemed more like a Beast than a Woman: She made all her Attendants forsake her, for if she caught them she would leave some Mark behind her; so they left her alone, giving her Meat at the Window, for none could come near her. One while she would put he Smock uppermost, anon she would bedaub her Face with Soot, and in this Condition the King came and beheld her, lamenting her Distemper, and said unto her: 'Lady, now is the Time come that I should have you to Wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.'

The Lady understanding him well, made shew as if she would beat him, and then fell into a strange Fit of Madness: One while she would run against the Chimney, another while fall into a great Laughter, then sit down and make Faces, and all to preserve her Chastity. Many Ways were tried for her Recovery, yet none prevailed: So leave we her in her Chamber, and return to *Valentine*, who with an ardent Desire is roving abroad, accompanied with *Pacolet*, to find out the Lady *Clerimond*. Long have they travelled to find her, and now they are arrived in *Esclardy*, which was the Kingdom of King *Trompart*, who carried away the Lady *Clerimond* on *Pacolet's* Horse. Being in the City, they asked for King *Trompart*; they told him he was slain by the King of *India*, and that at this present, *Lucar* his Son would revenge his Death upon him, and to that End he hath newly mustered up his Powers, and engaged many royal Kings to undertake this War. Then spake *Pacolet*, who well understood their Language, saying; Of what Account is this King *Lucar*? In Answer to which they told him, that he would shortly marry the Daughter of *Brandiffer*, that was late Wife to the King of *Antioch*, who was slain by *Brandiffer* because he forsook his Religion.

At this Tale *Valentine* was much surprized, and wonder'd at this sudden Alteration, but at last said: Know you what is become of the Lady that King *Trompart* brought with him? Of her we hear no Tidings, quoth his Host. Tell me then, said *Valentine*, where is King *Lucar* at this present, for I would fain serve under him for Wages, for my Money is fallen short, and I have a great Desire to follow the War? Marry, said the Host, King *Lucar* is in *Esclardy*, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge Army, attending *Brandiffer* to receive his Daughter in Wedlock. *Valentine* hearing all this hoped to hear of *Clerimond*, and so he departed and came to *Esclardy* to serve King *Lucar*.

Lucar being in the City of *Esclardy*, thither came *Brandiffer* with his Daughter, at Sight of whom King *Lucar* was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all others she never could affect him, yet she was led into the Hall and there married unto him. *Valentine* being abroad, and entering a Wood he heard the crying Voice of a Woman, whom a Sarazen would have ravished: *Valentine* still hearing the Cry, said to *Pacolet*, ride faster; for this Cry is more and more in my Ear, and we shall do a charitable Deed in relieving the Oppressed. Sir, said *Pacolet*, meddle not in this Matter, for you know not what Danger you may be brought into.

Pacolet, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the Name of a Knight, that will not aid in Time of Necessity: So he rode up and down the Wood, till at last he lighted on a Sarazen that had got a Lady under him. Then *Valentine* said: My Friend, forsake the Lady, and betake you to your Arms, to combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not? By *Mahomet*, quoth the Pagan, I accept thy Challenge, and will make thee know that in an evil Hour thou camest hither. These Words past, he left the Lady, and mounting his Horse, took his Shield and Spear, and being prepared, they made against each other so fiercely, that *Valentine* ran his Spear thro' the Body of the Pagan, insomuch that he fell down dead. Then went *Valentine* to the Maiden, and said: 'Damsel, now is your Enemy laid in the Dust, but I pray you shew me the Cause why this Man brought you into this Wood?' 'Sir, I will tell you nothing save the Truth; so it was, that Yesternight late he came to my Father's House to lodge, and there attempting the Use of my Body, but could nor obtain it, he departed from me, and went into the Chamber of my Father, and there slew him. Afterwards he thought he should surely have got his Will of me in this Manner as you see, from

from which by your Manhood, I am freed, and my Honour saved; do with me what pleaseth you, for your Body hath ransomed mine; and besides, as you have won me, I yield to your Pleasure. Damsel, by me thou shalt receive no Wrong, return to your House, and keep well your Chastity. So *Valentine* left the Maiden, and took his Way towards *Eselardy*. This Pagan had certain Attendants which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they had found him dead, they told his Misfortune to the King, saying: 'Our Master and Marshal lies slain in the Wood. The King was at this News right heavy, and presently sent out in Search, to see if they could find out the Murderer. At last *Valentine* and his Company were taken, who were confined and beaten by the King's Command. Now in this Castle was *Rosamond*, who knew *Valentine*, and was very sorrowful for him; anon she went unto the King, and said: 'Alas! Sir, do this Knight no Harm, for I vow he is the valiantest Knight breathing: he is called *Valentine* of France, that slew the mighty Dragon before the City of *Antioch*; make much of him, and take him into your Service, for his Fellow lives not in the World. Lady, said the King, oftentimes have I heard much Talk of his Prowess, and I have much desired to have a Sight of him. Then he called *Valentine* unto him, and said: Knight, fear not Death, but know that above all Men I love and hold you dear; you and all yours I receive into my Pay; yet one Thing still remaineth which you must do for me, which is, that you go into *India* and defy the King thereof in my Name, telling him that I am ready to revenge the Death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to Death, except he come presently with a Cord about his Neck, ready to receive the Sentence which by me and my Barons shall be imposed upon him: if he deny it, tell him I will shortly visit his Land and him with a War, and not leave Town or Village unransacked, nor spare the Life of any. 'Sir, said *Valentine*, all this I shall gladly do, altho' I know it to be a dangerous Adventure.'

The Queen *Rosamond*, seeing *Valentine* ready to depart, entered into her Chamber, and by one of her Damsels, sent for him; when he came he saluted her with great Reverence, then she said to him: 'Knight, you are welcome, for I had a great Desire to see you.' So had I, Lady, (quoth *Valentine*) as great a Desire to see you: For since I saw you, I understand your Husband is dead, and that you are newly married again. Lady, you know that, for Love of you at *Antioch*, I was in great Danger of my Life. 'Tis true, (said the Lady) and I acknowledge

myself guilty, and it was occasioned only out of Love to you. But now hath my Father bestowed me on King *Lucar*, who is rich above Measure, yet I cannot fancy him; he is a perfidious Traitor, and since you entered this Palace he is grown so jealous of you, that he sends you into *India* hoping you shall never return again, for never yet came any back alive: But I will circumvent him and set you free from Danger. Therefore know this, that not long ago the King of *India* requested me for his Wife; and the Truth is, I loved him better than this Traitor, but my Father crossed me in it: Now this King of *India*, in Token of Love, sent me a Ring, which hitherto I have kept and never shewn it to any save yourself; but seeing I perceive the Malice of *Lucar* towards you, I will give you that which shall defend you from Danger, and make you return a victorious Knight; and tho' I am sure you have no Need of my Love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot but confess my Heart with Love to you lies enthrall'd. Therefore, when you come before the King of *India*, this shall you do:

After Reverence made and Salutations from King *Lucar*, next greet him for me as my Love and secret Friend, and tell him, tho' my Father hath given me King *Lucar*, yet his Love cannot once slip out of my Breast, but still hath Assurance and full Hope one Day or other to meet with him again, and enjoy our wished Pleasure; tell him also, that when King *Lucar* bringeth his Host, I will come with him, and then if there be any Valour in him he may carry me whither he will. Now to the End he shall not find your Words to be in vain, bear him this Ring. Lady, quoth *Valentine*, for your Care; Love and Good-will towards me I humbly thank you, and make no Doubt but I shall deliver your Message effectually to the King of *India*, and thou shalt shortly have Answer thereof. So taking his Leave, he went to King *Lucar*, who allowed him ten Mariners to conduct him over an Arm of the Sea that lies between *Eselardy* and *India*, and having a prosperous Wind, the next Morning they arrived at the Port two Miles from the Palace of the King of *India*. Then *Valentine* being arrived, he drew forth his Horse, out of the Ship, and mounted him, and said unto the Mariners: Abide here till I return, for it shall not be long e'er I be dispatched. One of the Mariners said unto the rest, If thou return the Devil must bring thee, for of fifty Messengers not one returned again. *Valentine* heard this muttering Speech, but made no Answer: So he took his Way to the City, and when he was come near the Palace, he alighted off his

Horfe, and went to the King, who was in the Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three other Kings. As soon as he came up to the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled Brow, and thought he was a Messenger of King *Lucar*, and therefore said unto him: Art not thou a Servant of King *Lucar*? Sir, said *Valentine*, I am, and bring you Tidings that will fret your Heart; but on the other Side, I bring you such joyful Tidings from the fair *Rosamond*, that your very Soul will leap to hear it: Messenger, know this, that in Spite of King *Lucar*, thou shouldest have suffered Death, but for the Love and Reverence I owe unto that Lady, thou shalt receive no Injury, if so be that thou canst shew me any Token from her. Yes, said *Valentine*, that I shall shew you, and deliver my Message with such Applause, that I will not swerve from the Truth thereof. That I belong to King *Lucar* you know, who by me sendeth these Words, that for the Death of his Father, you must come and yield to his Mercy with a Rope about your Neck, as a Man guilty of so foul a Deed, to receive Sentence of Death according to your Desert; If you refuse it (as a Messenger) I breathe forth Defiance against you, and tell you that he will shortly come and lay waste your Lands, and ransack your Dominions.

Messenger, I understand thee, and set Slight by these bold Threats. And for Answer to this Matter, thou shalt have Letters, wherein shall be explained how little I regard his Menaces, and also how ready I am to receive his Forces that shall whip my Land: Therefore leave these Brags, and return to that thou hast to say concerning the fair *Rosamond*, for I desire to hear from her, not of all. Sir, said *Valentine*, on her Behalf I salute you as her Love, and she sendeth you Word, that she is against her Will married to King *Lucar*, whom she never loved. Again, the poor Lady is so burthened with Love towards you, that if she might have her Will, you should soon perceive that none should enjoy her but yourself, if you be so content.

Now to come somewhat nearer, she told me that she will come hither in the Company of the King her Husband, when he taketh up Arms to invade you, and then you may find Means to accomplish your Desire at Pleasure: By *Mahomet*, said the *Indian King*, this pleaseth me extremely. Sir, said *Valentine*, whether this came from a true Heart or no I cannot tell, but for a Token that all is true that I have said, receive here this Ring which you gave unto her, and tho' Women do prove variable, yet methinks she speaks to you from the most inward Recesses of her Heart. Friend, quoth he, this is

the same Ring indeed, and my Heart is overcome with Joy: Go thy Ways in, and take thy Repast, while in the mean Time I prepare Letters which thou shalt take with thee to answer this Defiance. *Valentine* went as the King commanded, and was highly feasted, still inquiring after *Clerimond*, but could not hear of her. By this Time came the King, and delivered to him the Letters; so *Valentine* took his Leave of him, but could not get any Account of his fair Lady *Clerimond*, who had suffered many sorrowful Days for him, and who still desires to hear of him: In the End he shall find her, but he must suffer many Tribulations and hard Achievements, as you may afterwards hear more at large.

Valentine made great Haste to be freed out of *India*, and taking Horfe he came to the Haven where the Mariners staid; at his coming they were amazed, and thought that he had not done his Message: 'Masters, quoth *Valentine*, fear nothing, for I have accomplished my Message, and am safely returned. Then the Mariners said, 'We much marvel thereat.' At these Words he took Ship, and on the Morrow they were in *Esclardy*. *Valentine* made no Stay, but as soon as he had mounted his Horfe, he went to the Palace of the King, finding him there accompanied with King *Brandisser* and fourteen other Kings that were come to the Succour of King *Lucar* against the *Indian King*. At the Return of *Valentine* they wondred, for the King sent him on Purpose never to return; however, he made *Valentine* come before them all, to tell Tidings of his Message. *Valentine* began thus to say, 'He regards not all your Threats a Straw; he is fierce and proud, and says, If you have a Mind to come to him, yet he has a greater Desire to come to you; and that you may know that I deliver nothing save the Truth; here is a Letter sealed with his own Hand, in which you shall understand his Mind more at large.' This Letter being broke open, they found *Valentine's* Words to be true. King *Brandisser* understanding this Answer, swore by all the Gods, that he would never return home again, but with Victory, or Loss of Life.

The next Morning they betook them to the Seas, with an Host of two hundred thousand *Sarazens*. The King carried *Rosamond* along with him, and were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their Tents in a pleasant Field before the City, whilst they of the City made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their Order, so that by the River-side he might spy their rich Pavillions, gallantly furnished with Arms and Streamers; then the King called unto him certain
Heralds

Heralds of Arms, to know by those Arms whose Tents they were? The first (quoth they) is *Brandiffer's*, the second *Lucar's*, and the third is *Rosamond's* with her Ladies. When the King understood that *Rosamond* was there, his Heart leaped for Joy, and said; It is now no Time to sleep, he that will have the Love of a fair Lady, must venture Life and Goods, or else he is not worthy of her, who will take no Pains. Hereupon resolving, he presently put his Men in Battle-array, and suddenly issued out of the City upon his Enemies, for they were not in a Readiness, and they little thought the *Indian* had been so fierce; but Love made him do it.

When the King saw *Brandiffer* ordering his Men in Battle-array, he left his Troops, and with great Speed rode towards the Pavillion of the Ladies: Now when *Rosamond* beheld it was he, she gave all the rest of her Company the Slip, and ran violently into his Arms, who joyfully received her. The *Indian* King perceiving her Good-will, got her up behind him, and putting Spurs to his Horse, she said: 'my Love is only fixed on you, and for you have I long mourned, for I never hated Man so much as I do King *Lucar*, but now I pray thee let me bid him farewell, and I will keep myself only to thee so long as I live.' Lady, quoth the *Indian*, doubt not, for I will not fail you, and here I vow e'er three Days pass, to make you Queen of *India*, and Mistress of all my Land. These Words passed as he was riding away with the Lady *Rosamond*. At last the Guard of Maidens came out of the Pavillion, and ran unto the King, saying: My Lord, there is evil Tidings, for this Day have you lost the Lady *Rosamond*; for the King of *India*, your utmost Enemy, hath stolen her hence, and has rode away with her; therefore quickly send your Men of War, and follow him, that they may save the Honour of the Queen. 'Hold your Peace, quoth *Lucar*, and talk no more, for he that hath an evil Wife, it is well if he can get rid of her: altho' he had a heavy Heart. After this he went to King *Brandiffer*, and said: 'Sir, I have small Joy of your Daughter, who hath left me to run away with a Stranger, and one that is mine Enemy, leaving me in Reproach and Shame.' 'Fair Son, said *Brandiffer*, be not discontented, for to Day I will be revenged on him that carried her away.' So putting Spurs to his Horse, rode after him, gathering a great Company of Men. Amongst the rest *Valentine* was willing to shew his Fidelity, who said unto *Pacolet*: 'Now shew by thy Art somewhat.' Then *Pacolet* raised such a Charm as so astonished the *Indian's* Eye-sight, that it seemed to him there was

nothing before his Horse but Woods, Bushes, and great Rivers. At this he was so amazed, that he made the Lady alight; when the Queen was on the Ground, she thought to use Means to save her Life with the King; but *Valentine* was so near to her, that he said: 'Lady abide; you must go with me, for you have a long Time promised me your Love.' 'Ah *Valentine*! I owe you but little Love, for once I made Love unto you and you refused me, therefore I am resolved to seek another! but seeing I am crossed thus, I yield myself as your Vassal, so you will make Peace with King *Lucar*.'

'Lady, said *Valentine*, I will do my Endeavour.' So he led her to King *Lucar*, and said unto him, 'Sir, here is the Lady *Rosamond* your Wife, whom the *Indian* Traitor hath led away against her Will, for which she was right sorrowful.' 'Sir, quoth the Lady, he telleth you true, for even as the Battle was begun, I saw one come to me, and thinking he had been one of your Barons, that had come to succour me, without any further Inquiry, I mounted on his Horse: Being on Horseback, I perceived then that I was betrayed, so I struggled, and pulled him by the Hair, and scratched him on the Face, and forcing him to let me go, I have by the Help of this good Knight, escaped.' 'Lady, said *Lucar*, you have well done; but at present we have no Leisure to inquire thereof.' So he left the Lady, and returned to the Battle. They of *India* returned into the City, having lost divers valiant Leaders; but none so fretted the *Indian* to the Heart as the Loss of *Rosamond*. 'Alas! Lady, said he, I have failed thee in thy greatest Extremity; but surely I was enchanted; on the sudden methought I saw Woods, Fields and Rivers; for she was no sooner down on the Ground, but all was plain and even before me.' *Valentine* had great Praise for getting again the Lady, and she shewed him a fair Countenance, in that he had succoured her, but it was feigned, for she hated him to Death; but putting up this Mischance, she watched her Time, and in the End she accomplish'd her Desire, by putting her ill Designs in Execution.

It is a common Saying, 'Women seldom want Deceit, (as here appeareth in *Rosamond*) for some four Years after she rode forth of her Tent, pretending to take the Air, but took her Way towards the King of *India*, having some Time before given him Intelligence of her Intent, desiring him, that when he saw her out of Danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his Prisoner, and carry her away. The King did according to her Direction. So, suddenly issuing out, he came and took her Horse by the Head, and led him into the City. Here-

Hereupon began a Cry throughout the Host of King *Lucar*, that *Rosamond* was surprized, and past Recovery. This grieved *Lucar* to the Heart, who gave out, that whosoever would recover her out of his Hands should be made a Seneschal. Sir, said *Pacolet*, if you be pleased to confer that Dignity on me, I will so work that I will fetch her back. Nay, said *Valentine*, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that she would be constant to her Husband, but all was in vain. The same Day that the King had her, he lay with her, and begat a Son called *Robestre*, who afterwards had the Possession of *Jerusalem*. *Lucar* was right sorrowful for the Loss of his Wife, but *Brandisser* her Father comforted him, saying: Son, take Courage, and let us be revenged before we depart: But it fell out otherwise, for that Day came a Messenger unto him, who brought him contrary Tidings, which was, that King *Pepin* of *France*, and the Emperor of *Greece* were entered his Land, burning and spoiling many Places, and were now on the Siege of *Angory*, in which City his Lady lay now in Child-bed; therefore you must take a Course to restrain the Fury of the Enemy, or else endure such Wreck as will be lamentable to behold.

Brandisser hereat amazed, went to his Son *Lucar*, and said; Son, here are evil Tidings come; the *French* have entred my Land, wasting and destroying all Things; therefore I must leave you and look after my own: But I will tell you what you shall do: Send some Knight to the *Indian* to demand your Wife; upon this Condition, that you will first forget the Death of your Father, and that you will raise your Siege and be gone. Therefore he sent *Valentine* unto the King of *India*, to declare this Message. Being come before him, he said: Great King, I am come from King *Lucar*, who says, that if you will restore his Wife back, he will forget his Father's Death, and will raise his Siege and be gone. To whom the *Indian* thus replied; If he will have a Wife, he must go and seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her. *Valentine* having received this Answer, departed, and came unto King *Lucar*, telling him all that the *Indian* King had said, which grieved him to the very Heart.

Lucar having by this Means, caused *Brandisser* to stay with him, sent *Valentine* and *Murgulant* to raise the Siege which King *Pepin* had laid against *Angory*. And as they were under Sail, *Valentine* spying a glittering Tower, asked what it might be? Then the Mariners described it to him. Now they were come within Sight of King *Pepin's* Tents, and *Murgulant* having viewed the Christian Forces,

found their Number to be great: Then, said *Valentine*, let us secretly send into the City, to acquaint them of our Coming, that To-morrow Morning they may issue out at that Side, and we will back them on this Side that none may escape our Hands. *Pacolet* standing by, said, Let me be the Messenger, for I can speak their Language. (Quoth *Murgulant*) go thy Way. So *Pacolet* departed, but said to himself, by To-morrow Night, you will find another Song. *Pacolet* being come to the very Gates of the City of *Angory*, the Keepers thought him to be some Spy, therefore they demanded of him, saying: Whither goes this Fellow, you look as if you were some Spy? 'Tis true, (quoth *Pacolet*) but I am not for your Hurt, therefore bring me into the Host of King *Pepin*, that I may speak with my Lord *Orson*, for I have a Matter of great Importance to acquaint him with. So they brought him into the Presence of *Orson*, who spying him was right joyful, and said; How fares my Brother *Valentine*? Then *Pacolet* told him of all his Adventures that had passed since they saw one another; and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, and how he could hear no Tidings of *Clerimond*; and told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with ten thousand Pagans, under the Conduct of *Valentine* and *Murgulant*, and to chase you out of these Confiners by the Command of King *Lucar* and *Brandisser*; but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the Pagans shortly home. (Quoth *Orson*) do as thou hast said, and you will gain immortal Praise to your Posterity. Sir, said *Pacolet*, I am bound in all Duty to your Brother *Valentine*, and the Service that I shall now undertake will highly please him: First, stand you still upon your Guard, and in the Night put all your Men in a Readiness, and that *Valentine* shall not be suspected to be in the Plot, he shall continue in his Tent, whilst I cast a strong Sleep on the *Sarazens*, and then may you come upon them and slay every Man. It is good, said *Orson*, so *Orson* sent him to King *Pepin*, to make him acquainted with the Enterprize, on which *Pacolet* was royally entertained for that Time. Now *Pacolet*, to the End there should be no Mistrust, gave certain Signs to *Murgulant*. Being in the City, he found out Admiral *Burnas*, and saluted him with great Reverence, and delivered unto him the Message which he had brought from *Murgulant*, which was, that of *Brandisser's* Party there is now arrived ten thousand; and *Murgulant* sends you Word by me, that To-morrow betimes you may have your Men in a Readiness to assail the Christians on the other

other Side of the City, and *Murgulant* will assail them on this Side, thereby to hem them up that not a Man may escape. The Admiral was glad to hear these Tidings, but he knew not how this should come to pass. *Pacolet* took his Leave of him and returned back again to *Murgulant* with Salutations from the Admiral. *Murgulant* gave him great Thanks for his Message, and *Pacolet* departed secretly to speak with *Valentine*. When he was come, he said thus unto him; Your Brother *Orson*, and your Uncle *Pepin* greet you well by me, to whom I have related the whole Manner of your Coming, because I would know the Plot he had in Hand; for he durst not reveal any Treason unto *Valentine*. The Night came wherein this bloody Stratagem was to be acted; so *Valentine* commanded the Watch to be strongly set, and would be in the Watch himself, but *Pacolet* found a Way to prevent him, and caused him to abide in his Tent. In the dead Time of the Night, *Pacolet* went among the Pagans, and cast such a Charm that they all fell asleep. This Opportunity was not let slip by King *Pepin*, for he with his Army entered the Host with sixty thousand fighting Men, and set Fire amongst the Tents and Pavillions, and killed all that were not destroyed by the Flames. At last they came to the Tent of *Murgulant*, who lay asleep in his Bed, who being suddenly affrighted, skipped out, and in his Body received a Dart, and so he fell down dead.

This Assault being given to the *Sarazens*, *Pacolet* said unto *Valentine*; Seek to save yourself, for the Christians have killed the Watch, and entered the Host. *Pacolet*, said *Valentine*, thou hast made me break my Promise with *Brandiffer*, for which I shall surely die. Fear not, quoth *Pacolet*, for he shall do no Harm. The Morrow after, *Burnas*, who knew not what had happened, issued out of *Angory* and set upon King *Pepin's* Host. The Battle grew both fierce and long: At last the Admiral couched his Spear, and running against the Knight of *Bay*, struck him Stone-dead; after that, with his Sword, he slew *Gyrard of Paris*; then came against *Robert of Normandy* and chopt off his Leg. At last King *Pepin* met with him, who couching his Spear, ran him quite thro'. The Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the City, and the Christians followed them; but they defended themselves so valiantly with Shot, that the Christians were forced to forsake the Walls: But by some other Stratagem they won the City, putting all the *Sarazens* to the Sword. Within this City was great Riches, which was divided among the Soldiers.

How Valentine returned back to India after the Battle, and bore with him the dead Body of King Murgulant: And how he heard Tidings of his Father: And how Pacolet freed the Indian King, and left Brandiffer in Prison. How King Lucar caused the hundred Men that watched the Indian, to be drawn to Death at Horses Tails: And Valentine and Pacolet departed secretly out of his Host, and went to Angory: And of the Vision of King Pepin, and how he went into the Holy Land, with the twelve Peers of France.

THE City being taken by the Christians, and *Valentine* finding the Body of *Murgulant* in the Field, caused it to be put up and covered with Black. After certain Days sail they arrived where *Lucar* and *Brandiffer* were, and in a mourning Manner brought it before the two Kings as they sat playing at Chesh. As soon as King *Lucar* saw *Valentine*, he said: 'Knight, welcome home, how fareth our Forces, have you put all the Christians to flight, and taken King *Pepin* and his Nephew *Orson*?' Alas! (said *Valentine*) it is fallen out contrary, for we have lost the Field, and all our Men are slain; for King *Parin*, who had the Charge of the Watch, let his Men sleep, and so the Christians came and made great Havock of our Army: As soon as I got any Tidings thereof, I awaked my Men, hoping to save them, but it was too late. In this Battle was slain your Uncle *Murgulant*, whose Body I have brought. This Spectacle fretted *Brandiffer* to the Heart, that in Madness, he threw away the Chesh-board, and said: Surely, *Valentine*, thou wert the Cause of this. Quoth *Valentine*, I return him the Lye that says so, and will maintain my Innocence with my Sword. Nay, said King *Lucar*, if he had plotted any Treason, he would never have come again. Then *Brandiffer* commanded the Body to be royally interr'd. The News rejoiced the *Indian*, who hereupon gathering up all his Forces, issued forth out of the City. The Battle being begun, *Valentine* threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand before him. At last meeting the *Indian King*, he smote him off his Horse: *Pacolet* seeing him down, *Valentine* and he led him to the Tent of King *Brandiffer*. When Tidings came that the *Indian King* was taken, he called unto his Men, saying: Follow hard and the Day is our own; which they accordingly did, and caused the *Indians* to retreat. When *Brandiffer* saw they withdrew themselves, they followed them to the Gates, where there was on both Sides a great Slaughter; the Battle lasted so long, that

that Night obliged them to give over: Then *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* returned to their Tents, and desired that the *Indian* King should be brought before him. When King *Lucar* saw him, he said unto him: Traitor, the End of thy Life is now at Hand. The *Indian* made Shift to understand him, but said never a Word.

King *Lucar* had no sooner ended his rough Speech to the *Indian*, but there arrived a Messenger, who said unto *Brandiffer*: I bring you sad Tidings, O King! for *Pepin*, King of *France*, hath taken your City of *Angory*, and put to the Sword, Man, Woman and Child. These are ill Tidings indeed, (quoth *Brandiffer*) but seeing we have the King of *India* in Subjection, I hope shortly to free my Country. Then he said unto King *Lucar*; 'Son, since we have the King of *India* secure, let us make short Work with him, and To-morrow Morning let him be hanged up; which being done, we will haste into *Angory* against the *French*, and take Vengeance of these Wrongs done unto me: Also, I have there in a strong Castle, the Emperor of *Greece* and the *Green Knight* prisoners, who, at my Coming, shall suffer Death.' *Valentine* being present, was glad to hear of his Father; and by a Sign he acquainted *Pacolet* that he should very shortly stand in Need of his Art, who inwardly vowed, that he would find some Means to release them out of Prison. Also the *Indian* looked wishfully on *Valentine*, and said thus unto himself; Cursed be that Hour that thou escapedst my Hands; for had I put thee to Death, these Dangers had never befallen me. Then King *Lucar* called a strong Guard of armed *Sarazens*, and said unto them; Keep well this Traitor, and To-morrow he shall be hanged. Then they took him and brought him into one of the Pavillions, and bound him about the Middle to a Post, and so left him, falling to Play again. Now *Valentine* called *Pacolet* unto him, saying; I am doubtful whether *Brandiffer* has my Father a Prisoner or not, and if I were assured thereof I would not have endangered my Body as I have in his Service: But now is the Time to be revenged. Sir, quoth *Pacolet*, you have small Reason to bear him Good-will; therefore, if you please, I will find a Way to free the *Indian* King, and to deliver *Brandiffer* into his Hands, so may your Uncle King *Pepin* hold *Angory* still. This, quoth *Valentine*, would be worthy of Thanks, therefore prosecute thy Plot, that so I may help my Uncle, and deliver my Father. *Pacolet* having an Eye to what he would do, after Supper came among those hundred that had the Charge of the *Indian*

King: after they had made a Fire without the Pavillion, *Pacolet* cast them all into a deep Sleep: Having so done, he went to the *Indian* King, and said: Noble King, be glad in me, for I am *Mabomet*, and am come to set you free; then go to thy Palace, and bear along with thee *Brandiffer*, who shall not know whither he goeth. Alas! said the *Indian* to *Pacolet*, (taking him for *Mabomet*) It should seem that I have deserved well at thy Hands, when thou tookest so much Pains to come down and deliver me from Death and mine Enemies. King, said *Pacolet*, trust in me, and believe the Counsel of thy Wife. Here-with *Pacolet* led him towards *Brandiffer*, causing all the Watch to fall into a dead Sleep, and so enchanted him, that he arose, made him ready, and went along with the *Indian* King to his Palace.

The *Indian* being thus set free, gave Thanks to *Mabomet* for his Delivery: Then *Pacolet* brought him a Horse, made him mount, and set *Brandiffer* behind him; and sent them packing for *India*, and so took his Leave. At last the *Indian* came to the Gates of his own City, and calling the Porter, was instantly let in. When *Rosamond* beheld him, she said: Sir, you are right welcome home: But how came you by my Father, that you have brought him with you? Is there a Peace concluded? No; quoth the King, *Mabomet* delivered him into my Hands, and freed me from Death. So by this Time ended the Vigour of the Charm, and *Brandiffer* awaking, began to say; How came I hither? Some Devil hath enchanted me. Nay, said the King, *Mabomet* hath brought us hither, that you may be at Peace with me. I had rather die, said *Brandiffer*, therefore set me free, that I may go to my Host again. Not so, for since you are here, I mean to keep you. Now the *Sarazens* that guarded the *Indian*, lay still asleep. At the Break of Day, King *Lucar* came to the Pavillion where the *Indian* lay; but when the Pagans saw him, they cried out for Mercy, having lost their Prisoner. Varlets, quoth *Lucar*, your Lives shall pay for it: So he caused them to be drawn along the Streets at Horses Tails, and after hanged. At which *Pacolet* laughed: But *Valentine* said: Friend, I shall never be at Ease till I have found out my Father, whom *Brandiffer* keepeth in Prison. Here *Valentine* and *Pacolet* left the Pagans, and after travelled to hear Tidings of the Lady *Clerimond*.

You have heard before how King *Pepin* took *Angory*: So now will I discover to you the Treason acted against him by *Haufray* and *Henry*. It happened as the King was in Bed in *Angory*, he had a Dream to this Effect: He thought that he beheld a

Mas-

Mass-Priest shewing unto him divers Relicks, besides a sumptuous Sepulchre; and three Times this Apparition troubled him: The Morning being now come, he called all his Barons, and declared to them the Manner of this Dream, and said unto them: Lords, I know not what may befall; but I think it some Delusion, or else it may be, that I should go visit these holy Places without the City of *Jerusalem*. Then spoke *Orson*, I will go with you if you please, and also *Millain Douglar*: after this the twelve Peers offered themselves to assist him in his Pilgrimage. The King seeing them so forward, gave them Thanks, and calling before him *Haufray* and *Henry*, and said unto them: You know you are my natural Sons, but yet in such Time were you gotten when I had not one Foot of Land in *France*; therefore it is my Will that you enjoy this Land of *Angory*, so keep it valiantly. Then *Haufray* said to *Henry*: You understand the King our Father well, do you not? He will prefer us to strange Lands, as if we were not worthy to be his Sons: Now he will leave *Charles France*, and we must be content with a foreign Part; therefore be ruled by me, and King *Pepin* shall never return into *France* to establish his Heir. We will work a Plot to deliver him into the Hands of the Pagans, and then we will be King of *France* and Emperor of *Rome*, all which I thirst after. Brother, quoth *Henry*, your Words are well put together; but how shall this Thing be done? *Haufray* said, I shall tell thee, Go unto King *Brandiffer*, tell him that I must have his Daughter *Galaxy*; and likewise tell him King *Pepin* and the twelve Peers of *France* do determine to go to the Holy Sepulchre, and they may be easily surprized, for they take along with them but a small Train. Brother, this will do well: Therefore make Haste to *India*, there you shall find King *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*: When you have found them, acquaint them with the Plot, and I will go along with them. Quoth *Haufray*, I shall never be at Quiet until this Business be finish'd. Thus had they plotted Treason against their Father, who had now entred the Seas, thinking to accomplish his Pilgrimage. *Henry* went along with them, and *Haufray* hath likewise taken his Way towards *India*. So leave we them and return to other Matters.

The Cailiff of *Bendas* being come into the Host of *Brandiffer* and *Lucar*, made a Truce for a Month between them and the King of *India*; So appointing a Day to meet, the Cailiff began thus to say: Lords, it is known unto you that the Christians have taken the Realm of *Angory*, therefore, I wonder that you stay here maintaining a needless War;

and suffer the Enemy to grow upon you in a Place of such Importance; therefore listen awhile to what I shall declare.

True it is, that the King of *India* slew your Father King *Trompart* for killing his Uncle; this was one good Turn for another: Therefore let the *Indian* deliver *Brandiffer*, and as for *Rosamond*, let her be brought and set between the two Kings, *Lucar* and the *Indian*; and if she will stay with the *Indian*, let her; and if she will go with *Lucar*, let him receive her. This Counsel was generally accepted; and *Rosamond* was brought forth; whereupon the Cailiff disclosed the Matter for which she was called. *Rosamond* having heard what was said, resolved to stay with the *Indian* King: And *Lucar* departed very sorrowful.

The same Day that the Cailiff procured this Confession, *Haufray* came unto the Host of *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, and making Haste to their Pavillion, saluted them, unto whom *Brandiffer* said; What Wind hath driven you hither? Sir, said *Haufray*, what I have to deliver requires Secrecy and Attention. On which they withdrew from their Attendants; and then *Haufray* said: Lords, you know that I am Son to King *Pepin* of *France*, and understanding that you (speaking to *Brandiffer*) have a beautiful Daughter; now if you will be pleased to give me her in Marriage, I will deliver into your Hands, my Father and all the Peers of *France*, that so much demnify'd you: For know that in the Habit of Pilgrims, they have taken a Journey to visit the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, slenderly accompanied: Quoth *Brandiffer*, for these Tidings I will give thee my Daughter *Galaxy*, but it will be upon Condition that you renounce your Faith. Yes, quoth *Haufray*, that I shall do: When King *Brandiffer* saw the Treachery of *Haufray*, first that he would betray his Father; next forsake his Religion; he withdrew himself to advise with King *Lucar* and the Cailiff, saying to them, You see the Treason of this Man that demandeth my Daughter: How dare I trust him that seeketh the Death of his Father, and the Ruin of the whole State of *France*? No, I will not make Peace with such an Homicide; I had rather see my Daughter's Death than give her to so vile a Traitor.

After these Words he called *Haufray*, and said: Sir, I am glad of your Coming, and this shall be your task, you shall go to my Daughter, and bear this Letter from me; there pass away the Time till we have further Leisure to resolve on your Business. Sir, said *Haufray*, I am ready to accomplish your

Demand. So he delivered him the Letter, and a hundred Men to conduct him on his Way: After they were at Sea, within few Days they came in Sight of the strong Castle where *Galazy* was; when they were come to the Castle, the Porter called to them, saying; My Lords, you may not enter without some certain Token: Porter, said *Haufray*, tell the Lady that we will satisfy her. The Porter went to the Lady, and said: Lady, without your Gates stands a Company of Men that fain would enter, and I think they are come from your Father. The Lady bad her Gentleman-usher go and know what they would have, and whence they were? who did as she commanded: As soon as she understood they came from her Father King *Brandiffer*, she bound up the Lions, and opened the Gate; so *Haufray* entered, and thought all this had been for his Good; but it fell out contrary, for by Treason he was entrapped. Being entered the Castle, he was brought before the Lady *Galazy*, whose Beauty then amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one Word. After some Time he saluted the Lady, and said unto her: 'Fair Sovereign, know, that for the great Renown I have heard of your admirable Beauty, I have left my Country, and passed the Seas to acquaint your Father with that which will make him happy, and so that you shall find me speak nothing but Truth, Lo, here is a Letter by me from your Father.' The Lady taking the Letter, read it; when she read it, she beheld *Haufray*, saying; 'Vassal, I have read the Letter, and find thee to be a Christian, and that thou hast sold the Life of thy Father, and the twelve Peers of *France*: All this my Father certifieth by his Letter unto me, and commandeth me that I determine what shall be done to thee. Now since I understand you to be such a perfidious Traitor, I swear by the Law I profess, I will neither take Pity nor Mercy on such a Wretch as thou art.' So she called unto her Officers, and committed him to Prison in a dark Dungeon. *Haufray* seeing what had happened, said; It is a bitter Marriage unto me; instead of having your Person I shall have a Prison; and so he was conveyed away out of her Presence. Now in the same Dungeon lay the Emperor of *Greece* and the *Green Knight*, and when they heard they should have another Fellow-prisoner, the Emperor, as soon as he came in, demanded of him whence he was? *Haufray* said, it is no Matter from whence; but know, I am the unhappy *Haufray*, Bastard-son to King *Pepin* of *France*. Why, quoth the Emperor, I am the Emperor of *Greece*; can you tell me how it fareth with my Brother King *Pepin*, and my

two Sons, and the Residue of the Peers of *France*? Sir, said *Haufray*, they are in this Country of *Angory*, and have gained the fame in Battle. So leave we them in Prison, and return to *Valentine* and *Pacolet*.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

How Valentine and Pacolet came before the Castle, and how Pacolet raised the Devil to ask his Counsel about the taking of the Castle: and how Brandiffer brought the twelve Peers of France into this strong Castle and imprisoned them.

AFTER many Days sail, these two arrived at the Castle, and viewing it narrowly, thought it impregnable? at last *Pacolet* said: 'Sir, anon I'll tell you more.' So he went aside and cast a Figure, and immediately there appeared unto him a Devil, who said unto him; Leave off your Enterprize, for the Castle is not to be taken but by Treason, and so vanished: Suddenly after his Departure there arose a great Smoke about the Castle, insomuch, that *Valentine* lost Sight of *Pacolet*, and was driven into an Amazement. This Mist being dispersed, *Pacolet* came to *Valentine* and said, 'Let us depart, for there is no Way to conquer this Castle but by Treason' so they forsook the Castle and went towards *Angory*: Being there, they demanded Tidings of King *Pepin*, but it was answered, he was gone towards *Jerusalem* on his Pilgrimage; however *Valentine* resolved to stay there till his Uncle returned, but all in vain, for by Treason of *Haufray*, King *Pepin* was surprized by *Brandiffer*, as you shall hear.

King *Pepin* being come to *Jerusalem* by the Directions of certain Guides, they were conducted to the Holy Places. During the Time of their Abode in *Jerusalem*, came *Brandiffer*, the Indian King, and *Lucar*; having had Intelligence by *Haufray*, as you have before heard, accompanied with a great Host of Men, and marched so far that they came to the King of *Jury*; being come to him, he much marvelled at their Coming, and after Salutations, demanded the Cause. Then spoke *Brandiffer*: Sir, know this, by a Christian we are informed, that lately there is come into this holy City certain Pilgrims, the one of them is King *Pepin* of *France*, and the rest are the twelve Peers: If it be so, we crave your Aid and Assistance; for they are unto us mortal Enemies, and have taken from me my City of *Angory*, making great Spoil within my Territories: Therefore, we desire that they may be delivered into our Hands, that we may proceed against them according to our Law? Your Demand is but reasonable, quoth the King of *Jury*, therefore, let all be done according to your Wish; for I am an Enemy unto

unto all such as shall deride us and our Religion. Now hearken a little to what I shall undertake; I will send unto the Patriarch about this Matter, and if he has any *French* Pilgrims he shall presently bring them before you. The King of *Jury* sent a Messenger unto the Patriarch to bring them before him: Then the Patriarch went unto the Pilgrims, and said; Friends, you must come before the King of *Jury*: At which King *Pepin* grew exceeding sad; for he thought he should lose his Life: But yet let us consider a little, and resolve upon what shall be done; let us here make *Henry* our Lord, and I will wait on him as a Page, bearing his Hat and Staff. *Henry* being too skilful in Treason; denied it, saying: Here is *Orson* and Duke *Millain* more worthy than I, let them take it upon them. Quoth *Millain*, so you please, I shall do any Thing. Then they took their Way towards the Pagan that sent for them. Duke *Millain* took upon him the Person of the King, and the King took his Hat and Staff. The Patriarch, after he had delivered them to the King, departed; and the King of *Jury* said unto them: It is told me you are *Frenchmen*, come as Spies, and amongst you is the King of *France*. Sir, said one of the Company, the King of *France* is not here. How! not here? said the King of *Jury*, if he does not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous Death. Then spoke *Henry* the Traitor, and said: It is not I. At these Words Duke *Millain* doubted Treason, and said: Sir, I am the King of *France*, but withal suffer me to tell you a Thing worthy of Note; we are all Christians, and it is free for us to go safely, even by your own Laws and Customs of your Country, paying a certain Tribute. Now this Tribute is by us duly paid and observed, therefore you do us much Wrong to detain us contrary to your Custom. Say what you will, said the King of *Jury*, but to Spies there is no such Privileges allowed. And now he called forth *Brandiffer* and *Lucar*, and said unto them; Lords, these be the Christian Spies, take them, and do with them what pleaseth you. These Words uttered, the Pilgrims were laid Hold on, and *Brandiffer* said: Lords, let these be conveyed to my strongest Castle, and put into the deepest Dungeon; which done, let us make Haste to *Angory* and beat out all our Enemies, then into *France*, to bring them to our Subjection; this may be easily effected, since we have all the Peers thereof in Captivity; for there is not a Man of Worth able to make Resistance. This done, the *Indian* King required that he might have the least of those Prisoners to make

him his Dwarf, of which was King *Pepin*: His Request was granted; and so he took along with him King *Pepin*, and loved him exceedingly.

The *Indian* King taking his Leave, every one of the Peers looked pitifully on King *Pepin*, but durst not speak to him. King *Pepin* being on his Way with the *Indian*, began thus to lament; 'How unfortunate am I among them! Alas, Duke *Millain*! it grieves me most for thee; for thy Love towards me hath brought thyself in Danger. But for my Son *Henry*, I lay my Curse on thee, who refused to deliver thy Father in Case of Extremity. Farewel *Beriba* my Wife, and my young Son *Charles*; thy Case is most dangerous; for what will not a Traitor attempt against thee! By this Time is the *Indian* come Home into his own Land. When the Lady *Rosamond* saw him approach, she was right glad, and received him with Kindness: At last casting her Eyes on King *Pepin*, who was of small Stature, she demanded of the King where he had got that little Man? Lady, said the King, he was given me at *Jerusalem*, being come thither with the King of *France* and the twelve Peers.

But now let us return to speak somewhat of *Clerimond*, who was in the Court of the *Indian* King. The King's Manner was, to send her for every Meal the best Meat from his own Table; and one Night at Supper, he called King *Pepin* unto him, to carry her Provision, saying; 'Go into the Great Chamber on the other Side of the Court, there shalt thou find a foolish Woman, bear this from me to her.' King *Pepin* did as he was commanded, but when he saw her in those Rags, he said unto her: 'I pity your distressed Condition.' When the Lady heard him say so, she said: Friend, pity thyself, let me alone, I am not what I seem to be; but tell me; art thou a Christian? Lady, said King *Pepin*, I am, and come from the Realm of *France*. The Lady, with a smiling Countenance, said: 'Know you King *Pepin*, and his Nephew *Valentine*? Ay, quoth King *Pepin*, and his Brother *Orson*, and his Father the Emperor of *Greece*. The Lady hearing him say so, began to shed Tears, but yet she said: 'Friend, may I trust you?' Ay, said King *Pepin*, as well as if I were your natural Father. 'Then know this for a Certainty, all that I have done is but counterfeit, for I am a Christian, and the woful Love of *Valentine*, that was given to him as his Wife, but was betrayed and stolen away by that Traitor King *Trompart*.' Thus she unfolded the Manner of all these Things. When King *Pepin* heard the lamentable Adventures of

this Lady, he began to weep, and said unto himself: 'Ha! what Trust is in this World? Alas! this poor Lady! Alas! poor *Valentine*! and yet to see it is my Chance at last to find her out in this unlook'd for Adventure.' After he had ended these Lamentations, he said: Now I understand whom you are, and since you trust me with the Secrets of your Heart, give me Leave also a little to shew you who I am: Here you may see me, and in what Manner I go cloathed; yet know that I am King *Pepin* of *France*, and by disastrous Chance am fallen into this Servitude. As for *Valentine*, know that he undertaketh dangerous Adventures, and continueth still without taking any Rest: Now since I have knowledge of you, if between us we can make these things known to him, with great Joy you may embrace each other. At those Words, the Lady swooned, but King *Pepin* seeing her recover'd, left her and went to the King who was at Supper. So here we rest to talk any more of this Matter, and return to say somewhat of *Brandisser* and King *Lucar*, who were busied in leading the twelve Peers of *France* to Prison.

Brandisser having the twelve Peers in Prison, and with them *Haufray* and *Henry*, the only Workers of the Treason, came unto this Castle, where he told the whole Enterprize to his Daughter, how the twelve Peers fell into his Hands. Having finished his Tale, he put them into a Dungeon in which the Emperor, the *Green Knight*, and *Haufray* lay.

Henry was much troubled, but he durst not discover his Mind to *Brandisser*, for he was the first that was led into the Dungeon; after him *Millain Douglass*, who by chance fell upon *Haufray*, which made him angry: 'Be not angry, quoth *Millain*, for there are many more to come after me, to whom you must give Place.' *Haufray* knew after that it was Duke *Millain*, and demanded of him by what Means he came thither? 'Nay, quoth *Millain*, I rather wonder how you came here, for I am sure we left you in the City of *Angory*.' Quoth the Traitor, 'I was taken for a Spy, and for that I am brought hither.' Now are all these Lords sorrowing in Prison; but when *Haufray* understood that King *Pepin* was not among them, he seemed outwardly exceeding glad, tho' in Heart he could wish his Death. Every one looked for nothing but Death, save only *Orson*, who bore it out comfortably, saying: 'Lords, let us trust to my Brother *Valentine* and *Pacolet*, who by Enchantment can do much; but he little knew that the Castle was impregnable. *Brandisser* having made all sure, called before him

his Daughter *Galaxy*, and said unto her: 'I must depart to satisfy mine Army; being there, I shall meet with the *Indian King* and King *Lucar*, both which will aid me against the *French* that holdeth the City of *Angory*, therefore keep well my Prisoners; so he departed. When he came unto his Army he found King *Lucar* ready, in that he had sent his Forces, but could not come himself directly, by reason that *Rosamond* was lately dead: but two Days after he came and joined him.

The two Kings gathered up their Forces, and took their Way towards *Angory*; being come, *Valentine* had Knowledge thereof, who kept the City for King *Pepin*. This much amazed the noble *Valentine* when he saw the Tents so nigh him: At last he called *Pacolet* unto him, saying; I wonder I hear not of my Uncle King *Pepin*. Fear not, said *Pacolet*, for e'er long we shall hear better News, and thereupon departed from *Angory*, and never rested till he came to the Camp of King *Lucar*, who spying him, demanded of him what News, and what was become of his Master, whom so long Time he had served? *Pacolet* answered, 'Sir, he is long since dead, and I am come to seek a new Master.' Quoth King *Lucar*, 'Wilt thou serve me?' 'Yes, quoth *Pacolet*.' Thus was he received into his Service, but he ill rewarded his new Master, for that same Night, by Enchantment, he cast *Lucar* into such a Sleep, that he carried him into *Angory*. *Valentine* was right glad of this; but King *Lucar* being placed before a Fire, the Enchantment ceased, and he awaked. Being awaked, he was much astonished to see himself thus betrayed, but at last *Pacolet* said unto him; Master, I am at your Service, have you any Thing for me to do? At which Words *Lucar* grew most enraged, and taking a Knife, gave *Pacolet* such a Wound that he fell down dead. *Valentine* seeing this Accident, was exceeding sorrowful, and said: 'Such another Friend shall I never have; False Traitor, quoth he, thou hast slain him that was all my Hope, and thou shalt surely pay for it.' Then said King *Lucar*, 'I am glad the Traitor is slain.

Now *Valentine* went towards the dead Corpse, and took out of his Bosom a Pair of Writing-tables in which was written the whole Manner of his Art. These Tables *Pacolet* had made *Valentine* acquainted with, wishing him that if he outlived him he would value them much. *Valentine* put them up and afterwards used them: Here would *Valentine* have King *Lucar* put to Death, but being advised otherwise, that it was better to keep him in Prison; if

if so be that any worthy Personage should be taken by the Pagans, then the Body of King *Lucar* should serve for the Ransom of the other. Then *Valentine* caused the Body of *Pacolet* to be honourably interr'd, whose Death was bewailed of all. The next Morning there arose an Outcry throughout the Army, that King *Lucar* was gone, and no Man knew where: Amongst the rest, *Brandiffer* made great Lamentation, till one told him he was in *Angory*, and how he had slain *Pacolet*. *Brandiffer* was glad *Pacolet* was slain, but sorry for King *Lucar*; at last he called a Messenger, to send to *Valentine*, to know if he would deliver King *Lucar*, for King *Pepin*, the Emperor, or *Orson*, or any of the twelve Peers of *France*. The Messenger departed on his Way with these Conditions, and coming to the City of *Angory*, desired to speak with *Valentine*. After Salutations on both Sides, he declared his Message from King *Brandiffer*. *Valentine* hearing of his Message, was much amazed, and said to the Messenger; 'How cometh it to pass, that *Brandiffer* can make Choice of all these valiant Men? How came they his Prisoners?' Quoth the Messenger, 'I think it is not unknown how King *Pepin*, accompanied with the twelve Peers of *France*, not long ago went to *Jerusalem*, and having among them one Traitor, were by him delivered into the Hands of *Brandiffer*, and by him taken at *Jerusalem* and committed to Prison; wherefore, having thus related the Truth, said: Will you change one Prisoner for another? Messenger, I shall give an Answer to thee anon. So entering into the Hall, he assembled all his Council, saying to them: 'Thus it is, that for our Prisoner King *Lucar*, we may have delivered to us either my Father or Brother, or my Uncle King *Pepin*: Now in this let us resolve what is to be done.' The Lords replied, 'You are most bound to your natural Father, therefore we judge it most meet to release him.' 'Lords, quoth *Valentine*, you have well advised, but yet I am determined to do otherwise, for you all know my Mother was wrongfully banished, and in Exile brought forth me and my Brother *Orson* in the Forest of *Orleans*, where we might have been devoured by Beasts, if my Uncle King *Pepin* had not taken me, nourished and brought me up to Man's Estate; after he made me a Knight, and bestowed upon me many Preferments; therefore I say, these Things considered, my Will is, that my Uncle King *Pepin* be set free for King *Lucar*; he being at Liberty thus, we will quickly work the Freedom of my Father, and all the rest. When the Barons heard the Wisdom of *Val-*

entine, they all agreed with one Voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then he called unto him the Messenger of *Brandiffer*, and said: 'Friend, return this Answer to thy Master; tell him that we shall willingly yield the Body of King *Lucar*, upon Condition, that he will deliver us the Body of King *Pepin*.' So after due Reverence done, the Messenger departed; being returned home, he delivered his Message, whereupon *Brandiffer* swore by the Gods, he should have his Request.

C H A P. XXXIX.

How Millain Douglar (who was taken for the King of France) was delivered out of Prison in lieu of King Lucar: And how Valentine and the Duke of Millain issued out of the City of Angory, and gained the Battle of the Sarazens: And how King Pepin was delivered in Exchange for the King of India's Marshal, who left Angory, and afterwards returned into France to succour his Wife.

Brandiffer understanding *Valentine's* Mind, suddenly sent Messengers to his Daughter *Galazy*, who kept the strong Castle, willing her to deliver to these Messengers the King of *France*, and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hearing of her Father's Mind readily obeyed, calling before her the Jailor of the Prison, and commanded him to call forth the King of *France*, for I am ordered to set him at Liberty. Duke *Millain* hearing this, could not satisfy himself, but in a doubting Manner, said: 'I am here, wherefore do you call me forth? If it be so I am the first that must suffer Death, and am ready to lose my Life to maintain my Religion.' 'Sir, quoth the Jailor, it is no such Matter, for you are to be delivered Body for Body to ransom a Pagan King which is in Captivity amongst the Christians.' When *Henry* heard these Words, he repented he had not taken upon him the Person of the King. Thus Duke *Millain* took his Leave with Tears. The Emperor of *Greece* said unto him: 'Above all, I pray remember me to my Son *Valentine*; and me too, quoth *Orson*, and tell him in what Misery we be, request him either to work our Delivery, or we cannot possibly live.' *Millain* comforted them all he could, and said: 'Lords, I will not return into *France* till I have set you at Liberty.' And so he took his Way. Being out of Prison, he went unto the Lady *Galazy*, with all dutiful Reverence, which she kindly accepted, and withal commended him to Fortune: So the Duke went along with the Messengers that were sent for the King of *France*. When they were come before *Brandiffer*, he said unto him: 'King, I would have you to know where

wherefore I sent for you, and to that End I have appointed those Messengers that brought you hither, to conduct you to the City of *Angory* to *Valentine*, and in your stead send me back my Son *Lucar* as he hath promised.' 'Sir, quoth the Duke, all this shall be done, and if he will not deliver King *Lucar*, as you expect, I will willingly come again and submit to your Mercy.' 'Royally spoke, quoth *Brandiffer*, I ask no more.' So the Duke took Leave, and departed with the Messengers towards *Angory*. After few Days they arrived, where they had free Access to the Palace where *Valentine* lay, and kindly embraced each other. After which Duke *Millain* took *Valentine* aside, and related to him the whole Course of his Actions, and how King *Pepin* was led away by the *Indian* King, who knew not who he was; and how he had taken upon him the King's Name, only to shield him from Danger. When *Valentine* heard this, he thanked him, and began to recount what Fortune had happened him, and how he was delivered, and the rest left in Bonds, for by your true Loyalty to your Sovereign, you are escaped from Danger. *Valentine* having ended his Discourse, he caused King *Lucar* to be brought before him, to whom he thus said: 'King *Lucar*, for this Time you are set at Liberty, but if ever you happen again into my Hands, I shall remember you for the Death of my Friend *Pacolet*, whom you have slain.' These Words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers. Now was *Lucar* delivered, and *Millain Douglar* restored in his stead. *Valentine* being reinforced by adding unto his Army the Duke's Company, gathered all his scattered Troops into Battle-array, and with the Number of fifty thousand fighting Men, issued out of the City upon the Enemy. *Brandiffer* hearing thereof, made towards him, accompanied with twenty-four Kings, and their Attendants, holding him as their chief Lord; but their Numbers were so infinite that the Christians durst not advance against them.

Valentine resolved to attack them notwithstanding their Numbers: and courageously heartening his Men, set upon that Part where *Brandiffer* and King *Lucar* were. In the thickest of this Battle, an Admiral, who was Lord of *Massidon*, spying a Frenchman making Havock with his Sword among the Pagans, made towards him, and hitting him with his Axe, cleaved his Head in two Pieces; just as he had done this Action, he was espied by a French Cavalier, who making towards this Admiral in the Presence of *Millain Douglar*, smote him dead; for which Act of Valour, *Millain* knighted him, and

said among them all: That he that won Glory should receive the like Reward. In this Manner continued the Battle all that Day, even till the Sun set. At last they strove on each Part which should sound a Retreat first, but neither Side would yield, so that they continued all that Night till the next Morning, making Fires to give them Light. At break of Day the Battle began afresh in a most fierce Manner, that Blood ran down like Water.

Valentine and *Millain Douglar* behaved themselves right valiantly; on every Side they beat down Horse and Man; but *Valentine* was too forward, for he entered so far into the Enemy's Camp, that he came very near the Standard of *Brandiffer*. Being there, the *Indian* Admiral espied him, who ran so fierce at him, that he slew *Valentine's* Horse under him, who perceiving himself unhorsed, lightly got upon his Feet, and with his Sword hewed out a Passage; but he could not have escaped had not Duke *Millain* by meer Chance relieved him with a fresh Horse: So *Valentine* retired out of the Battle to refresh his wearied Limbs. When the *Indian* Marshal saw their Side had the worst, by Policy he withdrew his Forces, and in the Night-time stole out of Sight, so that at last they took to their Heels and ran away.

Valentine perceiving it, told Duke *Millain* thereof; so they determined that *Valentine* and his Troops should set upon the Marshal, which they did, and fell upon the *Indians* in such a furious Manner, that upon the first Encounter they broke their Battle-array. The Marshal seeing it, thought to have fled; but *Valentine* meeting him at his Advantage, lent him such a Rap with his Spear, as both Horse and Man fell to the Earth. Being on the Ground, the Soldiers would have killed him, had not *Valentine* charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the Custody of four valiant Knights.

In this Battle there were many Prisoners of Account taken; all which *Valentine* sent into *Angory*, to be kept in Safety. By this Time *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* knew that they had the worst, but they could not make Resistance. At last they resolved to return again into their own Country, and renew their Forces afresh; so wrapping up their Ensigns, they took their Flight towards the Sea-coast, and the Christians followed after, killing all that withstood them. Of all the Pagan Multitudes that went into the Field, none escaped but an hundred Persons: Being gone, the Christians rising their Tents, found inestimable Treasure: and having so done, they returned

turned to *Angory* to rest their tired Limbs. After the Christians had gained the Battle, and given Burial to the Dead, *Valentine* commanded the Prisoners to be brought before him. Among the rest was the Marshal of *India*, of whom he demanded if he would forsake *Mahometism*? the Marshal answered, he would sooner forsake his Life: Then Duke *Mil-lain* demanded of what Country he was? he said: 'I am a Marshal of *India*, whom the King loveth.' Quoth the Duke to *Valentine*, we are made happy in this Prisoner, for in Exchange of him we shall release King *Pepin*, who was led away to be Dwarf to the *Indian* King, when we were taken Prisoners at *Jerusalem*. Then they demanded of him, if the King had not in his Possession such a Christian of low Stature? 'Yes, quoth he, there remaineth such a one in his Court, but not as his Prisoner, and thither was he brought when the twelve Peers of *France* were taken at *Jerusalem*.' 'Marshal, quoth *Valentine*, it is he, after whom we inquire, therefore let him be brought hither, and delivered to us, and you shall be set at Liberty; for he is a Page whom I ever loved above all who attended on my Person.' At these Words the Marshal rejoiced, and sent Letters to the *Indian* King. The Messenger being dispatched, brought Letters to the *Indian* King, and when he had read them, was willing to exchange; for he knew not that it was King *Pepin*: and calling him before him, said: 'Friend, we give you free Liberty to depart our Country, for our Marshal being taken among the Christians, shall be delivered in your Stead.' King *Pepin* thanked him, and taking his Leave of the King, ran to the Lady *Clerimond*, and said: 'Lady, take good Heart, for I am set at Liberty, and I will send *Valentine* unto you, who will soon release you.' The Lady hearing this was very joyful; and King *Pepin* departed with the Messenger towards *Angory*. After a few Days they arrived there, where the *Frenchmen* spared no Cost to shew their Love to King *Pepin*. At last *Valentine* said: 'Uncle, we had good Fortune in taking the Marshal, for by that Means we have procured your Liberty.' 'Nephew, said King *Pepin*, you above all Men, have most Cause to rejoice, for I bring you the happiest News that ever you heard, and thus it is: Fair *Clerimond*, whom you so long have lost, is now found, and by me sendeth you hearty Commendations.' Then he related her Misfortunes, and how she demeaned herself to shun the Love of the *Indian* King. *Valentine* hearing these joyful Tidings, uttered these Words: 'Dear Lady, thou hast bought my Love at too dear a Rate, and cursed

may I be if ever I prove false; therefore for Trial thereof I will purchase thy Freedom, or else lose my Life.' This speech being ended, the Marshal was delivered. Then *Valentine* betook him to his Chamber, to try the Tables that he had taken out of *Pacolet's* Bosom when he was slain, and found every Thing set down to fall out just as it now came to pass, and taking Pen, Ink, and Paper, he wrote down what he there found, and sewing it in his Doublet for Fear of losing it, proved of great Use to him for the Safeguard of his Life, as hereafter shall appear.

King *Pepin* residing in *Angory*, News was brought him from his Wife *Bertha*, that all *France* was doubtful of his Life, and of the twelve Peers of *France*, because they heard they were all taken Prisoners by the Pagans at *Jerusalem*; this Report running for current throughout *France*, caused *Arthur* of *Britain*, with a puissant Army, to enter the Kingdom, and to win the Crown of *France* by Violence: Also the said *Arthur* hath committed to Exile your young Son *Charles*. When King *Pepin* heard these Tidings he grew wonderful desperate, and presently called together all his Barons, and held a Council, which was requisite to be done in such a Plot. At last it was resolved, that King *Pepin* in Person should go into his own Land to suppress the Usurper, which he accordingly did, and coming to *Valentine*, he began to speak unto the King; 'Fair Uncle, it were most requisite that I should tarry here, to gather new Forces to rescue my Father, and the twelve Peers of *France*.' 'Do so, quoth King *Pepin*, and if it so fall out that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh Supplies against the Pagans, that you may with more Ease compass what you intended to do.

C H A P. XL.

How Valentine, under the Pretence of a Physician, went into India to see and speak with the fair Lady Clerimond; and how he rode away with her. How the King of Britain was given to King Pepin by Treason; and how Valentine took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father, the Emperor, and all the rest of the Prisoners. How the Emperor, Orson, and the Green Knight kept a strong Garrison in this Castle; and how Hauf-ray and Henry compassed the Death of their Father. How the Emperor of Greece, Orson and the Green Knight left the Castle, and came to the Succour of Valentine in Angory: and how Valentine ignorantly slew his own Father, &c.

YOU have heard already that King *Pepin* brought News unto *Valentine* of the Lady *Clerimond*, which having heard, he could not put it out of his Mind: At last he resolved to pass from *Angory* to *India*, accompanied with one Squire; and pretending to be a Physician, he went to Sea with the *Indian* Merchants: Being arrived, he lay in the City at an Inn, till his Gown and Habiliments were in Readiness. At his first Entrance in this Inn the Host ask'd him what he was? He said, a Physician, and can cure any Manner of Disease. The Host believed him, and his Squire served him as an Apothecary and Clerk. In this Manner he lay there about four Days, after which he called his Host to him, and desired him to get a Man to go about the City to make known his Art, and see who needeth Help, that I may cure them, for I would fain get something to defray my Charge while I stay in your House; but in the mean Time, rather than you shall mistrust me, I will leave you a good Pledge: 'Marry, quoth the Host, with all my Heart, I accept of it.' So *Valentine* delivered to him a rich Mantle, furred about with costly Furs, and bid him bring him before those that he might make known his Art to. The Host went out and brought him a ragged Fellow, who had not any Thing to hang upon him. *Valentine* was glad of such a one as this, and new clothed him from Head to Foot, and said unto him: 'Friend, go thy Ways into the City, and cry out about the same, that there is come a Physician that can heal all diseases, even mad Men or Women, he will undertake to cure.'

The Fellow, as he was commanded, passed from Place to Place to make known this Doctor's Skill. At last these Tidings came to the King; for he gave out that he could in an extraordinary Manner recover mad Folks to their former Senses. The King having a great Affection for the Lady *Clerimond*, sent for this Physician, who, tho' he had before him many lame and blind People at his Lodgings, yet left them all and went to the King; for the Lady *Clerimond* was the Mark at which he aimed. Being come before the King, he made his Obedience in the Name of the great God *Jupiter*: then the King said, 'Sir, you are right welcome to my Court; first dine, and then I shall tell you further Cause of my sending for you.' The King being sat and served, made *Valentine* to be greatly attended, and Dinner being done, said unto him: 'Sir, I have a beautiful Lady in this Palace whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly, but she by no Means would consent till the Term of one

Year was expired; I granted her to forbear that Year as she demanded, but at the End she was possessed with Lunacy, insomuch that none durst come within her Reach; sometimes she whistles, anon she crieth out in a pitiful Manner, another while she laugheth, and then falleth into a Flood of Tears, so that my Heart is overcharged with Sorrow: Now if your Skill can extend itself to cure her, I will give you more Wealth than you can ask, for my Wife *Rosamond* being dead, I design to make her Queen of *India*.' 'My Liege, quoth *Valentine*, fear not but she shall do well; but she is the harder to be cured, in that it hath seized her so long: Again, I must be with her all Night to know the Manner of her Fits.' You shall, quoth the King, have one appointed to bring you thither, but look to yourself lest she harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady guided *Valentine* to her Window: Then *Valentine* ordered he might return and leave them alone. When *Valentine* beheld her in this desperate Case, he said: 'Alas my Love, you have bought me as dear as I have you; but by the Gods I swear I will never return into *France* till I have taken you along with me, or else here lose my Life.' The Lady beheld him fearfully, and whatsoever came to Hand she threw at him, which amazed *Valentine*. Then said *Valentine*: 'Is this true Madness, or but feigned? Dear Love tell me true? I am *Valentine* your Love, for whom you have suffered all this Damage; think on the Brazen Head that you gave me, or of my Brother *Orson* that had the String cut in his Mouth, and how you were stolen away by the Enchanter *Adriam*. When the Lady heard this she fell into a Swoon for Joy; but being again recovered, she said: 'Alas! my Love, how many Dangers have we passed thro', you for me, and I for you? And now behold the Condition I am in for thee.' Lady, Love dearly bought is the sweetest.' By this Time the Trumpets sounded for Supper, so that he said unto the Lady: 'My Love, I will go to the Palace, but after Supper I will come again, for the King knoweth not but I am a Physician, and hath sent for me to heal you. The Lady bid him go. Being come into the Palace, as soon as the King saw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady? 'Yes, quoth *Valentine*, To-morrow you shall hear her speak as discreetly as ever she did.' The King was so joyful thereat, that he gave him a rich Mantle all beset with precious Stones, and caused him to sit down at his own Table. After Supper *Valentine* said unto the King: 'It is necessary that I have

have a Fire all this Night in the Chamber where my Patient is, for she will be very sick all this Night.'

'Well, quoth the King, let all Things be done, and spare no Cost.' Now *Valentine* takes his Way towards the Chamber of fair *Clerimond*, with one that carried Wood to make a Fire, which being done, he ordered every one to depart save only his 'Squire: Then *Valentine* shut all the Doors and Windows, and said unto *Clerimond*: 'Sweet Lady, now may we embrace with Pleasure, and casting his Eyes aside, he spied the wooden Horse, and asked her whose it was? She answered; *Pacole's*: Then, said *Valentine*, let us depart hence immediately, whereunto she consented. *Valentine* being somewhat acquainted with *Pacole's* Horse, mounted him with *Clerimond* and his 'Squire, in a Moon-shine Night, and with great Expedition hastened unto the City of *Angory*; being come thither, *Valentine* caused the Gates thereof to be opened, where there was great Joy for the Lady *Clerimond*. The next Morning *Valentine* caused her to be clad in rich Attire, and married her. By this Time the King knew of her Escape, and grew frantic, and said: 'Ha! thou false Enchanter, hast thou deceived me? If thou fall once again into my Hands, I will bereave thee of thy Life.' And so he caused Pursuit to be made after *Valentine*, but all in vain, for they found him not. Here leave we them. Now I proceed to tell you of King *Pepin*, how he hastened into *France* to the Succour of *Bertba* his Wife, and to chastise the Usurper. The King of *Britain*, not thinking what would happen, strengthened himself with all the Forces he could, and sent out Proclamations, that all that could bear Arms should assist him into *France*. Hereupon Queen *Bertba*, with her young Son *Charles*, fled to *Lyons* to seek Succour. At the same time lived a worthy and trusty Earl of *Anjou*, who favoured the Queen, and pitying her Distress, fortified his Castle against the *Britons*, to whom the Queen sent four thousand Horse to keep the Passage. At last the King of *Britain* bid the Earl give him Passage into *France*, but he answered no. Hereupon there was a band of Soldiers appointed to lay Siege to *Angiers*; but the Earl kept close within the City, and would not issue out thereof. During the Siege King *Pepin* was come to *Paris*, and was joyfully received. When the Queen understood he was at *Paris*, she hastened unto him, and when she came before him, in Tears she said: 'Dear Lord, revenge us on this Usurper.' 'Lady, quoth the King, fear it not.' So calling about him his Councillors and Men of War, made

haste to furnish his Companies; and many there were that voluntarily offered themselves to do the King any Service. By this time the King of *Britain* heard that King *Pepin* was come against him with a great Army, who feared him, and not without Cause: But see what followed, for his Friends betrayed him unto King *Pepin* to save their own Estates, and to make their Peace the better with the King. So resolving hereupon, on a Night they came to him lying on his Bed, and led him by Force before King *Pepin*, who presently caused his Head to be smitten off within the City of *Paris*. Now they that betrayed him thought all was well; but the King after all, seized their Lands into his Hands.

Now was *Valentine* much troubled in Mind, how he should free the Emperor his Father from Imprisonment, for he knew well that the Castle was not to be won by War, nor by any thing but by Treason: At last he resolv'd on a subtle Plot, and thus it was: He put to Sea twelve Ships, manned with two thousand Men, and laden with all Manner of Riches, as precious Stones and Silks; and thus as Merchants, they arrived at this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him to be a Merchant, setting a rich Crown on his Head, and said unto his Men, Be you all privately armed within the Ships, so that none of you be seen! if the *Sarazens* come aboard, put them to Death. Then coming towards the Castle-gate with the Crown on his Head, the Porter said, 'What brings you hither?' 'Friend, said *Valentine*, I am a Merchant going into *Spain*, and having many rich Commodities, I hear say that I might not pass without a Tribute on pain of Death.' Said the Porter, 'I'll go to my Lady and bring you an Answer.' So he went to *Galazy* and told his Message. The Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels on board, she said unto her Seneschal; 'Go and receive the Tribute due to me of the Merchant, and take along with you a sufficient Company of Soldiers, lest they should offer you Injury.' He did as he was commanded, and coming to the Ships, he found inestimable Gems, insomuch that they were ravished therewith. So taking the Value that was due to the Lady, suddenly the Christians that lay hid in the Ships, set upon them, and slew them. Then *Valentine* said unto them, 'Except we go forward in this Enterprize, we shall never gain the Castle;' therefore he caused fifty of his Men to put on the *Sarazens* Gowns over their Armour, and so loading themselves with Silks and precious Stones, they took their Way towards the Castle. The Porter tied up the Lions, let down

the Draw-bridge, and thirsting after some great Reward, went beyond his Bounds, inſomuch as *Valentine* led him to the Ships; being come, *Valentine* ſhewed him their dead bodies, and ſaid: 'I will make you like one of theſe if you give me not Paſſage into this Caſtle.' 'Sir, quoth the Porter, I ſhall do it.' 'Why then, quoth *Valentine*, I will reward thee.' 'Come, ſaid the Porter, and bring all theſe Men whom you have clad in the Habit of the *Sarazens*, ſo they cannot be known from them in the Caſtle, and let them enter one by one,' which they did; ſo being enter'd, the Porter ſhewed them a ſecret Poſtern, which *Valentine* having got, cauſed all the Doors to be ſet open: then winded his Horn, at which all thoſe in the Ships haſten'd unto them. Then he entered the Chamber of the Lady *Galazy*, who was aſtoniſhed thereat: But he ſaid; 'Lady, fear not, for I have ventured the Seas to ſee your Royal Prefence.' Then ſhe bid him Welcome, and highly feaſted him.

Valentine's Men having entered the Caſtle, with their Shouts ſo frighted the Lady, that in a weeping Manner ſhe ſaid unto him: 'Courteous Knight, ſpare my Virginity.' 'Lady, quoth he, fear not, for none dare attempt any Diſhonour towards your Perſon.' By this time all the Pagans within the Caſtle were ſlain, and *Valentine* haſting into the Dungeon, broke it open, and cried out aloud; 'All you that are alive come forth.' *Orſon* knowing his Voice, replied, 'Brother, you are welcome, how came you hither?' *Valentine* ſaid, 'I am come to ſet you at Liberty.' At thoſe Words the Emperor fell into a Swoon; but *Orſon* ſuddenly recovered him. Then they came out of the Dungeon with ragged Cloaths and ill-coloured Faces: But the Chriſtians revelled for the Space of ſeven Days in the Caſtle; and *Orſon* falling in Love with *Galazy* after the Death of *Pezon* married her, by whom he had a Son named *Orſayr*, who after had the Empire of *Conſtantinople*. Theſe Affairs being brought to an End, a Council was held, to know what was beſt to be done: At laſt they reſolved to leave a Garriſon to reſiſt the Enemy: Some ſaid it was fitting that *Haufray* and *Henry* ſhould undertake this Taſk: But *Haufray* replied, 'Not we, for we are determined to go into France to ſave our Father.' Quoth *Orſon*, if you will have it ſo, we have ſmall Reaſon to weep at your Departure, for there is nothing but Treason in you.' At theſe Words *Haufray* and *Henry* were diſpleaſed, but they durſt not ſhew it. At laſt it was reſolved, that the Emperor ſhould take his Reſt, and his Son *Orſon* and the

Green Knight ſhould remain there to defend the Caſtle, whiſt *Valentine* and the reſt addreſſed themſelves for *Angory*. Now will we look into the Treason of *Haufray* and *Henry*, who being come into France, laid a Plot to take away the Life of their Father, little *Charles* his Son, and *Bertha* the Queen. Being come to *Paris*, the King royally feaſted them, and after demanded what News of the Emperor, *Valentine*, *Orſon* and the reſt. Quoth the Traitors, 'They were all ſlain in Battle at *Angory*;' at which the King was wonderful ſad. After this they poiſoned the King and Queen. Now little *Charles* was ſtill living, who, as the Gods would have it, happened under the ſafe Keeping of *Millain Douglar*.

The King and Queen being both treacherouſly poiſoned, the two Traitors ſeem'd to be exceeding ſorrowful; but Duke *Millain* being a Man of a courageous Spirit, forthwith cauſed a Council to be held, wherein he would have crowned young *Charles* King of France; but *Haufray* and *Henry* by Bribes, ſo corrupted the Lords, that *Charles* was held too young. Hereupon Duke *Millain* was committed to Priſon for holding on the Child's Part, and *Charles* held as a Kitchen boy.

A little after it happen'd that *Haufray* commanded *Charles* to turn a Spit; but the Boy being full of Maſtety took up the Spit and ſell'd him to the Earth. At this out ſteps *Henry*, thinking to ſmite the Child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him ſuch a Box on the Ear, that the Blood iſſued out at his Mouth. Then *Haufray* commanded his Men to lay hold on him; but there came a Knight who took *Charles* by the Hand, and conveyed him to *Paris*. The Traitors perceiving *Charles* was gone, made after him, but he could not be found. Hereupon Duke *Millain* told his Wife thereof, who was Siſter to *Charles*: but the Lady could not hear the ſame without Tears, and vow'd that they ſhould dearly pay for this Treason; and forthwith cauſed Letters to be written into *Angory*, to *Valentine* and the twelve Peers of France. Theſe Letters came firſt into the Hands of *Valentine*, who could not chuſe but weep at this Act of Villainy. The Lords perceiving his Tears, aſked the Cauſe: He answered; 'King *Pepin* and the Queen are dead; and as for *Charles*, the two accuſed Brothers, *Haufray* and *Henry* have chaſed him out of his Country, impriſoned Duke *Millain*, and all that held on young *Charles*' Side: Theſe are the Contents of the Letters, and the Lady that ſendeth them requireth Help to apprehend theſe Rebels.' Theſe ſad Tidings

things put them to their Wits End, and being between two Extremes, knew not which Way to take; for *Brandiffer* was daily expected with an Army of many thousands: At last *Valentine* said: 'E're tomorrow Night I'll set free Duke *Millain* or else my Skill shall deceive me.' At which they laughed heartily. *Valentine* departed, and with *Pacoler's* Horse he suddenly arrived at *Paris*, where by his Art he opened the Gates, and released all the Prisoners: and being shewed the Chamber where Duke *Millain* was, he entered the same, who being fast asleep, awaked him, and said; 'Sir, I am *Valentine*, who am come to set you free.' Then he mounted him on his Horse, and bid him not speak, for he was to pass thro' the Air.

The Duke prayed him to pass by the Castle of *Angier*, that he might see his Wife; which he did; and being come, the Lady thereof presently ran and kissed him, and demanded of him whither he went? 'Lady, quoth he, I go to fight against the Infidels, to bring home the twelve Peers of *France*, and with an Army to overthrow *Haufray* and *Henry*, and succour *Charles*.' Having refreshed themselves with Meat, they set forth towards *Munga*, being come, they came before the Barons, who were much astonished at *Valentine's* Art, greatly desiring to learn it; but he would teach it to no Man. Now was *Brandiffer* with his Host come within a Mile of *Angory*, and there planted his Army. The Citizens hearing thereof, shut up their Gates, drew up their Bridges, and after got on the Walls, lying a Month together without making Resistance. The Emperor hearing that *Brandiffer* had begirt *Angory* with so huge an Army, resolved to leave the strong Castle to the Guard of a Knight. Then the Emperor, *Orson* and the *Green Knight* took shipping, accompanied with a thousand Soldiers; being at Sea, they saw a great Fleet of Ships coming to them; at last they found it to be a Pagan with ten thousand Men, going to the Succour of *Brandiffer*. The Christians long- ing to fight the Pagans, fell upon them, so that there happened a bloody Battle. Great Valour was shewn on both Sides, but they knew not whither the Victory would incline. At last the Pagan Admiral encountering a Christian Knight, tumbled him over Ship-board. *Orson* standing by him, grew exceeding angry, and taking his Axe, struck him Stone dead. This Deed discouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themselves all that Night, having lost fifteen tall Ships and four hundred Men. The Emperor said; 'Lords, let us arm ourselves with such Weapons as we have seiz'd from the Pagans; which

they presently did; but this Enterprize was fatal, for the Emperor was slain by his own Son *Valentine*, who took him to be an Infidel, as hereafter you shall hear. But here they hoist Sail again, and at last they arrived in *Angory*.

After a Month's Siege, *Valentine* sent a Defiance to *Brandiffer*, offering him Battle. The Christians divided their Army into ten Squadrons, whereof Duke *Millain* was their General: The second, *Samson* of *Orleans*: The third, E. of *Vendesme*: The fourth, E. of *Campagne*: The fifth, *Quintine* of *Normandy*: The sixth, Duke of *Burgundy*: The seventh, the E. of *Dampmartin*: The eighth, the Earl of *Asserwe*: The ninth, the Marshal of *Constantinople*: The tenth was *Valentine*, who added Courage to all the rest: Being in Order, they issued out of the City to assail *Brandiffer*, who divided his Army into twelve Squadrons, and each Squadron was commanded by a King. At the joining of these Armies, a certain Pagan, that never before had been in Wars, couched his Spear in his Wrist, and would be the foremost Man; but *Valentine* thinking to cool his Pride, ran against him, and struck him dead. Then they fell to it pell-mell, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly, and the *Indian King* entering the Battle, made very great Slaughter; but *Valentine* meeting him, gave him such a Counterbuff, that he threw him off his Horse.

At present, the Christians got the better, and caused the Infidels to give Ground; but there came in a *Sarazen* Captain with three thousand Men, and renewed the Battle more fierce than before. By this time King *Lucar* came to the *Indian King*, and gave him Succour. Now the Christians began to retire, so that they had been forced to a shameful Flight, had not two valiant Knights arrived in *Angory*, with seven hundred Men at Arms, (which had lately come from the Holy Sepulchre, and suffered much Misery) and entered the Field. One of them brought into *France* the Daughter of a rich Admiral, named *Claradine*, and caused her to be baptized; the Name of the one was *Reynord* of *Provence*, the other, *Millain* of *Dyon*. At their Approach the Pagans were much discomfited, for *Millain* of *Dyon*, at his first Encounter, smote King *Lucar* Stone dead, and next, another King called *Rubres*, which Accident much amazed *Brandiffer*. At another Part of the Battle, rushed in *Reynord*, and slew many of them. *Valentine* wondering at these two Knights of Chivalry, and coming towards them, said: 'Lords, you are welcome, I pray what are you, or by what Chance came hither?' 'Friend, quoth *Reynord*,

we are Lords of *France*, and lately come from the Holy Sepulchre, and hearing of these Wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans: I am called *Reynord*, Lord of *Provence*, and my Companion is called *Millain* of *Dyon*.' Quoth *Valentine*, 'Once again heartily welcome, for *Millain Douglar* is here and all the Peers of *France*: So they jointly rushed afresh into the Battle. All this while the *Indian King* had a Spleen against *Valentine* for his last Disgrace, and finding him out, accompanied only with three other Kings, he encountered him, that they smote him and his Horse to the Ground; being down, he quickly recovered, and drawing his Sword, defended himself therewith, but with much Danger.

At last Duke *Millain*, *Samson*, and *Gervis* came to his Succour, getting a fresh Horse for him, *Valentine* being mounted, made his Course towards the *Indian King* again, and striking him down, took away his Shield, which he kept, for he had lost his own. This ended, Tidings came that a great Fleet of *Sarazens* were coming near unto the Haven: Hereupon *Valentine* said: 'Lords, let us go and strengthen the Passages.' Then *Valentine* and Duke *Millain* of *Dyon* went to the Haven: However it happened these were all friends and Christians, among whom was his Father the Emperor of *Greece*, of whom you shall hear more at large. The Emperor having landed his Men, *Valentine* saluted him with a Spear in his Wrist: The Emperor (who bore the Helmet of a *Sarazen* unknown) encounter'd with his Son: At last *Valentine* ran his Spear quite thro' his Father's Body, that he fell down dead. His Father being dead, he said, *Monjoy vive Greece*. *Orson* seeing his Father dead, wept, and said to *Valentine*; 'Brother, there is small Conquest in this, for you have slain your Father.' When he heard him say so, he in an Extasy of Grief fell from his Horse. To this Lamentation of the two Brothers came *Reynord* of *Provence*, and *Millain* of *Dyon* to comfort them, saying: 'Knights, have Patience, for Tears cannot recal him.' Alas! said *Valentine*, what have I done? It were happy for me if Death would take me away: I have committed a Fact detestable both to God and Man: O! what shall become of me! My Life I have passed away in Troubles, Torments and Cares; and now to add more Sorrow to my Days, I have shed the Blood of my Father. 'Brother *Orson*, take my Sword and cut off my Head, that the Earth may not bear so bloody a Butcher.' 'Brother, said *Orson*, depart not thus, but repent, and no doubt but you

shall be forgiven.' So comforting him in this Manner, at last they got him to his Horse; being mounted, he ran thro' the Pagan Troops so furiously, that all that stood in his Way perished. Now began the Battle to increase, and King *Christo* slew the Christians on every Side. At last *Valentine* meeting with him, gave him such a Canvalada, that he pierc'd his Body quite thro'. In this Battle Duke *Millain* of *Dyon*, and *Reynord* of *Provence*, rush'd so fierce into the Body of the Enemy, that they were taken Prisoners; yet notwithstanding their adverse Fortune, they got their Liberty once again; and made *Charles King of France*, with Honour and Joy, to the Destruction of *Haufray* and *Henry*, the two notorious Traitors: Yet was not this fierce, long and tedious Battle ended, for they stood it out manfully on both Sides. *Valentine* being careless of Life, at last met with *Brandiffer*, who encountered each other so fiercely, that both fell to the Earth, but *Valentine* suddenly recovering himself, gave the King such a Blow that he clave his Head. King *Brumant* seeing his Brother slain, went out of the Field with Admiral *Cordes*, and King *Josireb*, and caused a Retreat to be sounded. The Christians following, slew many thousands, and others leapt into the Sea and drowned themselves. The Night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City: Next Morning, in burying the Dead, there was a great Lamentation for the Emperor of *Greece*, then his Body was royally interr'd in the City of *Angory*; but *Valentine* could not be comforted.

The Pagans being thus twice put to flight before *Angory*, Duke *Millain* took his Leave of *Valentine*, to return into *France*, saying; 'Valentine, I wish I could return as swiftly back as you brought me hither.' 'Friend, quoth *Valentine*, I wish I had never known the Art, for it hath brought nothing but Shame and Vexation on me, and him an untimely Death that taught it me;' So Duke *Millain* departed. *Valentine* and *Orson* intended to go for *Greece*; but before they departed, they crowned the *Green Knight King of Angory*. After Leave taken, *Orson* called the fair *Galazy* unto him, and said; 'Love, I know you are with Child by me, yet I cannot wed you for I have another Wife; but before I go, I will make certain Lands over unto you for Maintenance, that you may hereafter live of yourself without the Help of any other.'

All these Offers she denied; and said she would go to Sea with him; and after confine herself to some religious House wherein she might spend the Residue of her Days. Agreed, quoth *Orson*, and

so he took her with him to *Constantinople*. Being come thither, they sent Word to the Empress of their Father's Death, but they concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was sorrowful for her Husband, but joyful at the Sight of her Children: The City also made great Triumphs for the same. The Empress being on a certain time at Dinner, said unto her Sons; 'It must be agreed betwixt you which shall be Emperor.' *Orson* reply'd, 'It appertaineth not to me to take the first Place.' 'Brother, let it be as I say; for I am beholden unto you, but you nothing to me; therefore take the Empire and sway the Sceptre. At last it was agreed on that they should jointly govern: But *Valentine* continued not long in that State of Dignity, for shortly after, one Morning he called to him *Clerimond*, and said thus unto her: 'Understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my Conscience still remaineth troubled for that Fact, I am resolved to go into Pilgrimage. Commend me to my Mother, and Brother *Orson*, both which I charge you not to see till fifteen Days be passed over, then give them this Letter.' All which the Lady consented to, altho' in Tears.

C H A P. XLI.

How Valentine took Leave of Clerimond before his Pilgrimage, How King Hugon demanded her for his Wife, and betrayed Orson and the Green Knight. How Galeran delivered Letters to the Ladies; and of the grievous Lamentations they made. How Bellifant and Clerimond came to know of King Hugon's Treason. How Galeran lost his Head, and how Orson and the Green Knight were set free.

THEN *Valentine* said; 'Lady, cease your Tears, and give me your Wedding-ring.' She having done so, he broke it in two Pieces, keeping the one half, and giving her the other, saying: 'My Love, keep thy half, and whatsoever you hear, believe nothing till you see this other half which I possess.' At these Words he embraced her, and wept bitterly; so he departed only with one Page. Having long travelled, at last he came to *Rome*, and coming into the Presence of a Hermit, he there confessed the Death of his Father. The Hermit seeing him so penitent, enjoin'd him in Penance: Saying, 'First change thy Habit, and go barely clothed, and lie seven Years under the Stairs of thy own Palace, without speaking any Word: Thou shalt neither eat nor drink, but of the Scraps that come from thine own Table; do this and fear not thy Sins.' 'Sir, said *Valentine*, all this will I do.' So after he had dined, he departed without speaking to his Servant. After this *Valentine* entered into a Wood,

feeding upon Roots; and continued there so long, that he was forgotten among Men.

Orson having read the Letter that *Clerimond* delivered him, wept bitterly, inasmuch as the Lady said to him, Brother, cease your Lamentations. Alas! said *Orson*, I have no great Cause, for this Letter sheweth that my Brother will never return: At which the Lady swooned, but recovering herself, she said: Why hath my Love banished him from me? But all her Sorrow could not call him home again. News was spread thro' the City, that *Valentine* would never return. *Clerimond* bewailed, *Bellifant* complained, and *Orson* sighed. Now (as the Story saith) the Lady *Fezon* hearing that *Orson* had got another Lady with Child, she died with Grief: Being dead, *Orson* made a Year's Solemnity for her Funeral, and after married *Galaxy*, of whom you have heard before.

Now will I shew you how *Valentine* came to *Constantinople* in beggarly Weeds, inasmuch that he was not known; going from House to House begging. At last he went into his Brother's Palace about Supper-time, and those that waited at the Table, beat him away- *Orson* seeing them so churlish, bid them let him alone: saying, 'I am willing all poor Men should be relieved for my Brother *Valentine*'s Sake, that so we may hear Tidings of him.' After this, they brought him Meat and Wine; but he spying a Basket wherein the broken Meat was put, went and eat thereof, which amazed the Beholders. Night being come, the Servants asked *Orson* if he would let that Counterfeit abide in his Palace? 'Ay, quoth *Orson*, and use him well. Thus abode *Valentine*, who made his Bed of Straw under the Stairs. On the Morrow, *Orson* passing by, gave him Money; after came his Mother and his Wife *Clerimond*, who gave him Money, saying; How can you be thus naked without Cloaths? This Night you shall have some provided for you. They being gone, he gave his Money to a poor Man standing by, who scoffed him for his Labour. Next Day at Dinner they brought him Variety of Meats, which he refused, but made Signs for the Alms-basket. *Orson*, to try him further, caused some of the best Meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then said *Orson*, Surely this is some Vow he hath made to the Gods. Thus did *Valentine* remain in the Palace without being known, for all Men thought he was dead.

In these Days there was a King in *Hungaria*, named *Hugon*, who heard that *Valentine* had given over the Empire to his Brother *Orson*: This *Hugon* came unto *Constantinople*, and was honourably received

ceived: After his Arrival, he came unto the Lady *Clerimond*, and said; I am King of *Hungaria*, and have no Wife, and for that Purpose am come hither to crave your Love. I know that *Valentine* is dead, or at least he will never return; dear Lady, grant me thy Love, and thou shalt be Queen of *Hungaria*. Sir, quoth the Lady, I thank you for your kind Proffer, but to be your Wife I cannot, for sure *Valentine* liveth, and for seven Years, every Day I will expect his Return; Besides my Brother *Orson* and the *Green Knight* must know, for without their Leave I will never marry. Then he went towards *Orson*, and demanded of him if he heard any News of his Brother. Great King, quoth *Orson*, no, but I have had a Letter from him, which his Wife delivered me, which certifieth that he is gone to Exile, and beareth about him half the Ring he was married withal; the other Half he left to *Clerimond*; charging her that she believe nothing of him till she see the other Half which he possesseth. The Gods be his Speed, quoth *Hugon*, for he was a worthy Knight. But one Thing, quoth *Hugon*, I have more to acquaint you with: I am determined to take a long Journey to *Jerusalem*, to visit the Holy Shrine, so you would bear me Company. With all my Heat, quoth *Orson*, but let us go to *Angory* and take along with us the *Green Knight*, who is King thereof. It shall be so, quoth *Hugon*. So *Orson* taking Leave of his Wife *Galazy*, went to *Angory*, and there was receiv'd with great Joy. Having feasted there, they took their Way to *Jerusalem*. Being come into the City, while they were beholding divers Monuments, *Hugon* stole away from them to the King of *Fury*, and said, I have a Message to deliver worth your Attention. There is newly arrived here two Knights who are your greatest Enemies; for they slew King *Brandisser*, King *Lucar* and your Brother the King of *India*. When *Robestre* heard all that he could say, he was sorry for the Death of his Brother, and said to *Hugon*; Can you deliver me these two Knights? Yes, said the Traitor, so you would give me their Royal Seals: Sir, quoth he, them and much more will I give you. Then hearken, send to the Patriarch's House, and he will tell you where they are. The King soon sent out eight hundred Men, who found them at Dinner, took them, and brought them to the King. False Enemies, quoth the King, to our Lives and Religion; my Heart leapeth for Joy that I have got you; and there is another called *Valentine*, had I him also, I would use you all alike: Then he caused their Seals to be taken away and given to *Hugon*, and they to be cast

into a Dungeon, to be fed only with Bread and Water. Now all this while they knew not what was become of *Hugon*, for they thought he had been slain by the *Sarazens*; but he was plotting with another Traitor in the City called *Galeran*, and began thus to salute him: *Galeran*, my Desire is to employ your Secresy in a Matter of Importance, and I will reward you sufficiently. Uncle, quoth *Galeran*, fear not, I know your Drift, you would obtain fair *Clerimond*: True, said *Hugon*, therefore let us write a Letter in the Name of *Orson*, and seal it with his Seal, and the Letter shall be thus worded:

ORSON, by the Power of the Gods, Emperor of *Greece*, unto the thrice renowned Sovereign Lady, my Mother, unto you my Love *Galazy*, and my Sister *Clerimond*, greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our Expectation, which are here set down, and requires Patience. Ladies, know, that I have found my Brother *Valentine* on his Death-bed, at *Jerusalem*, and a little before his last Gasps, he charged me to salute the Lady *Clerimond* in his Name, and commanded her, that if ever she marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband. The Cause why he sent not the Half-ring was, that it was stolen from him in his Sickness.

The Letter thus finished, *Hugon* wrote another in the Name of *Orson* and the *Green Knight*, saying:

RIGHT well-beloved Sister, there has been enough said about our Brother *Valentine*, therefore we wish you (for the great Beauty wherewith you are adorned) first, to accomplish the Desire of the Dead; secondly, to increase your Honour, we desire you to match with *Hugon* King of *Hungaria*, as you will avoid our Displeasure: And for further Authority, we have sealed these Letters with our Seals. Again know, that we cannot yet return; for great War is fallen between the Infidels and Christians. So we leave you to the Tuition of the Gods.

These Letters being sealed, *Hugon* gave them to *Galeran* to bear to *Constantinople*, himself following after, by this Means thinking to get the Lady. *Galeran* being in *Constantinople*, delivered the Letters to the Lady *Bellisant*, who commanded that he should be highly feasted. Afterwards she called one to read them, and *Valentine* lying in the Hall, heard the Contents thereof. Being read, the Ladies grew exceeding

exceeding sorrowful for the Death of *Valentine*; but especially the Lady *Clerimond* piteously lamented his Misfortunes; saying, How unhappy among Women am I! Alas, *Valentine*! why went I not with thee to see thy Body laid up safe in the Earth? Unkind Brother, and *Green Knight*, why are you such Enemies, to wish me to marry so soon after *Valentine's* Death, seeing I have lost such a magnanimous and loving Knight, the Mirror of Chivalry, the Rose of Honour, the Example of Courtesy, and Patron of Truth? Death! hast thou not one Dart left to shoot at this poor Breast? for seeing my Life is nothing but Sorrow, I will never have another Husband; but in Sorrow will I spend my Days. All this *Valentine* beheld, which he pitied, but fearing to be known, buried in Silence. *Bellissant* seeing *Clerimond* thus violent, said, Daughter, be patient, he was my Son, and I am sorry for him at my Heart, but when I consider he cannot be brought back therewith, I pass it over: Rather think on what your Brother and my Son *Orson* doth advise you. Good Mother, quoth the Lady, say no more, for I shall never marry; and then went weeping to her Chamber; and *Valentine* lay under the Stairs, musing how the Treason should come about. Some few Days after King *Hugon* came to *Constantinople*, and was receiv'd with great Honour; but *Clerimond* shewed him no Favour. Being there, he said unto the Empress, You have heard of the Death of your Son, for whom I am sorry: But it is agreed upon that I should marry his Lady. Sir, quoth the Lady *Clerimond*, I am not willing to marry you or any other. All this Treason *Valentine* heard; but in the End, the Matter was so urged, that *Hugon* had the Lady's Consent, which much increased his Joy, but it was short.

Valentine having ended his Orisons to the Gods, the Oracle made Answer to him thus: *Valentine*, get thee out of the City, and without the Gates is a Pilgrim; put on his Weeds, then get thee to the Palace, and there, before all Comers, reveal the Treason practised against thy Love; for in this Disguise thou canst not be known. *Valentine* did accordingly, and came to Court in the Pilgrim's Weeds, where, in the Presence of the Ladies, was the Traitor *Hugon*, even he that uttered such reproachful Words against *Clerimond*: Now *Valentine* came to *Bellissant*, saying, Lady, I beseech you shew me the Wife of *Valentine*: At which *Hugon* blushing, replied, Pilgrim, get thee hence into the Kitchen, for this is no Place for thee. Sir, said *Valentine*, I would fain do a Message to her. Wouldst thou? said the Lady, I am she whom thou desirest to see.

Then thus, I have lately seen your Love *Valentine*, and by me sendeth Salutations, willing me to say, that within three Days he will be with you: Pilgrim (quoth the Lady) advise well thyself what thou speakest, for I hear my Love is dead. Lady, (quoth the Pilgrim) believe it not, for I protest to deliver my Body to Death if it be not true as I have said: *Hugon* hearing these Words related, secretly mounted his Horse, and never returned back. The Ladies on the other Side were amazed at the Pilgrim's Tale, and offered to feast him, but he would not, only said to them: Ladies, pardon me I pray, for I have certain Companions in the Town which I must needs visit: Yet *Clerimond* would gratify him for his News, giving him Money, which he bountifully bestowed again upon the Servants. Presently after, it was demanded what was become of King *Hugon*? A Damsel standing by, said, I saw him take Horse, but where he is now, I know not.

Upon these Words, *Galeran* came in, and they asked him what was become of his Uncle *Hugon*? who making no Reply, *Bellissant* grew enraged, and said, you shall not escape till you have revealed the Treason *Hugon* hath practised against us. Then *Galeran* said, Lady, have Mercy on me, and I shall tell you all: Say on, I pardon thee. My Uncle, said he, is guilty of Treason, and hath sold to the Pagans the Emperor *Orson* and the *Green Knight*; which Tale daunted the Assembly; but *Galeran* was presently hanged. Then *Valentine* leaving the Habit of the Pilgrim, returned again to the Palace; *Clerimond* spying him, said; Poor Man, where have you been? methinks you seem displeased because I said I would not marry. *Valentine* replied not one Word, but left her; yet not contented at his Dejection, caused a costly Quilt to be brought for him to lie on, but he refused.

King *Jury* having *Orson* and the *Green Knight* in Prison, caused them to be brought before him, and said: Lords, you are at my Mercy, therefore, I vow you shall never escape with Life, except you resign back the City of *Angory*. *Orson* replied, We will never consent hereunto except you give *Hugon* unto us. The King said unto them: Speak not of him, for he is the Traitor that hath delivered you into my Hands, and he hath your Seals. *Orson* and the *Green Knight* marvelled much thereat, and swore they would be revenged on him.

Now it fell out, that these Prisoners were obliged to yield to the King's Command, and returned to *Constantinople*: Being come home, *Clerimond* told them that she had heard Tidings of *Valentine*, which

which rejoiced *Orson*, who lying with his Wife that Night, got a Son called *Morant*, who after ruled *Angory*. Not long after, *Orson* raised an Army of Men to go to *Angory*, which when *Hugon* heard, he offered him the City, and four Horse Loads of Gold; and if any there durst call him Traitor, (*Orson* excepted) he would fight with him. The *Green Knight* accepted this Challenge; so arming themselves, the *Green Knight* came first into the List. All Things set in Order, they encountered each other with their Spears, next with their Swords; at last the *Green Knight* gave *Hugon* such a Stroke on his Helm that he cut away Part of his Head, so that he fell into a Swoon; thus was the *Green Knight* Conqueror. *Hugon* reviving again, desired a Confessor, and unfolding the Treason, died in the Place. *Orson* nevertheless, caused his Body to be sumptuously interred. At last *Hugon's* Treason being blown abroad, they delivered the City to the Emperor *Orson*. This being ended, they returned into *Constantinople*; but *Clerimond* marvelled she had not heard of *Valentine*.

C H A P. XLII.

How at the seven Years End, Valentine died in the Palace of Constantinople; and how Orson turned Hermit.

AT the End of seven Years, *Valentine* fell into a mortal Disease, whereof he died; before his Death, an Angel appeared unto him, saying; *Valentine*, thy Glais is run out, for within four Hours shalt thou die: At which he greatly rejoiced, and made a Sign for Pen, Ink and Paper: when he got it, he wrote that it was he that appeared like a Pilgrim, and discovered the Treason. After putting his Name to it, he closed up the Paper, putting in the other Half of the Ring that he had kept. Shortly after, he laid him down and died. When *Orson* saw that he was dead, he was troubled in Mind. The poor Man being dead, held the Paper in his Hand, which *Orson* would have taken out, but could not,

then came *Clerimond*, and as she laid Hold thereon, the Hand opened itself. *Clerimond* broke open the Letter, and knowing the Half Ring, said: Lords, we shall shortly hear News of *Valentine*. So a Secretary was called to read it; at the reading thereof great Lamentations were made, especially by *Clerimond*, who falling on the dead Body, said: 'Alas! have I lost all my Joy, Comfort and Hope; that my Love should die so near my Person and I not know of it.' Now great Preparations were made for his Funeral Rites, who was interred with great Magnificence in *Constantinople*. *Clerimond* after betook her to a single Life. Thus having shewn the Death of *Valentine*, and what became of *Clerimond*, let us return to *Orson*, who ruled the Empire of *Greece* seven Years, and by his second Wife *Galaxy*, had a Son named *Morant*, who afterwards was King of *Angory*.

After these seven Years were expired, *Galaxy* died, for whom *Orson* was exceeding sorrowful, and in the End betook him to the Woods, feeding on Bread and Roots. It happened one Night that he saw a Vision, which seemed to him more glorious than his Tongue could utter. After this Vision he awaked, and being astonished thereat, with Tears he came to the *Green Knight*, and said: Sir, I see the Uncertainty of the World, for which I am ready to resign my Estate and Children unto you. See them well educated, that they may be fit to govern such a People, for I will spend the Remainder of my Days in solitary Contemplations.

When the *Green Knight* heard these Words, he wept bitterly, but *Orson* comforted him, saying; Weep not, but pray for me, as I will for you, that you may accomplish that which I put you in Trust withal.

So taking his Way towards the Wood, he there spent the Remainder of his Days. The *Green Knight* after this so governed his Children, that they carefully spent their Time on Earth, and followed their Father to his Grave.

F I N I S.

n,
he
is,
e-
of
le-
sl
ny
of
u-
fi-
er
of
us
e-
on
y.
ey
nd
on
he
us
he
rs
ee
ly
ee
rn
of

he
g;
at
ift

re
en
ey
ed